Sector
Gems and Jewellery

Sub – Sector
Handmade Gold and Gems-Set Jewellery

Occupation
Goldsmith (Basic)

Reference ID: G&J/Q0603, Version 1.0
NSQF Level 3
Skilling is building a better India. If we have to move India towards development then Skill Development should be our mission.

Shri Narendra Modi
Prime Minister of India
Acknowledgements

GJSCI would like to thank Vidhya Mazumdar for developing this Facilitator Guide. We would also like to take this opportunity to thank Indian Institute of Gems and Jewellery Jaipur (IIGJJ) for their valuable inputs in the book. We thank H.K Designs India & Fine Jewellery for their feedback and suggestions. We appreciate the endless efforts of our Subject Matter Experts to maintain quality of education and skills. We sincerely thank them for inspiring and facilitating students of Gem & Jewellery sector across India.

Sincerely,

Prem Kumar Kothari
Chairman, GJSCI
About this Guide

This Facilitator Guide is designed to enable training for the specific Qualification Pack (QP). Each National Occupational (NOS) is covered across Unit/s.

Key Learning Objectives for the specific NOS mark the beginning of the Unit/s for that NOS. The symbols used in this book are described below.

Symbols Used

- Steps
- Time
- Tips
- Notes
- Objectives
- Do
- Ask
- Explain
- Elaborate
- Field Visit
- Practical
- Lab
- Demonstrate
- Exercise
- Team Activity
- Facilitation Notes
- Learning Outcomes
- Say
- Resources
- Activity
- Summary
- Role Play
- Example
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>S.No.</th>
<th>Modules and Units</th>
<th>Page No.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 1.1 – Icebreaker</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 1.2 – Gem and Jewellery Sector in India</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 1.3 – Objectives of the Program</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 1.4 – Where does Goldsmith - Component Maker Fall in the Jewellery Making Process</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 1.5 – Job Opportunities of a Goldsmith - Component Maker</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td><strong>Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy (G&amp;J/N0601)</strong></td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.1 – Introduction to Jewellery Making Process</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.2 – Job Work of a Goldsmith – Component Maker</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.3 – Introduction to Metals</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.4 – Metal Alloys</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.5 – Types of Jewellery</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.6 – Types of Settings</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.7 – Components or Findings Used in Jewellery Making</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.8 – Tools and Equipment Required for All Component Making</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.9 – Drawing Wire from Precious Metal</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 2.10 – Making Sheets from Precious Metal</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td><strong>Make Balls from Precious Metal or Alloy (G&amp;J/N0602)</strong></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 3.1 – Make the Balls or Beads</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 3.2 – File the Ball Segments</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 3.3 – Bead Making Machines</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td><strong>Stamp Patterns on Gold or Its Alloy (G&amp;J/N0603)</strong></td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 4.1 – Stamp the Gold Sheet</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 4.2 – File the Stamped Piece</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td><strong>Make Chain from Gold Bar (G&amp;J/N0604)</strong></td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.1 – Make Chain from Gold or Alloy</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.2 – File the Chain Components</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.3 – Detecting Product Defects</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.4 – Reading the Job Sheet</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.5 – Controlling Gold Loss</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.6 – Achieving Quality Standards</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.7 – Maintaining Quality of Production</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.8 – Know Your Organization and Its Standards</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 5.9 – Work Hazards</td>
<td>133</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S.No.</td>
<td>Modules and Units</td>
<td>Page No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Maintain IPR and Respect Copyright (G&amp;J/N9910)</td>
<td>135, 137, 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 6.1 – Scope of IPR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 6.2 – Types of IPR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Coordinate with Others (G&amp;J/N9912)</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 7.1 – Importance of Interaction and Coordination</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 7.2 – Interacting with Supervisor</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 7.3 – Interacting with Colleagues and Other Departments</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>Maintain Health and Safety at Workplace (G&amp;J/N9914)</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 8.1 – Understand Potential Sources of Accidents</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 8.2 – Understand Safety Signs and Appropriate Requirements to be Safe</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 8.3 – Understand Ergonomics or Bad Posture of Body</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 8.4 – Fire Safety Rules</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 8.5 – Understand How to Deal with Emergency Situations</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Employability &amp; Entrepreneurship Skills</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 9.1 - Personal Strengths &amp; Value Systems</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 9.2 - Digital Literacy: A Recap</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 9.3 - Money Matters</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 9.4 - Preparing for Employment &amp; Self Employment</td>
<td>233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 9.5 - Understanding Entrepreneurship</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unit 9.6 - Preparing to be an Entrepreneur</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Annexures</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Annexure I: Training Delivery Plan</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Annexure II: Assessment Criteria</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Introduction

Unit 1.1 - Icebreaker
Unit 1.2 - Gem and Jewellery Sector in India
Unit 1.3 – Objectives of the Program
Unit 1.4 – Where does Goldsmith - Component Maker Fall in the Jewellery Making Process
Unit 1.5 – Job Opportunities of a Goldsmith - Component Maker
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, you will be able to:

1. Build rapport with fellow students of the program
2. Identify your roles and responsibilities
3. Get students to interact
4. Get students to think about their job role
5. Explain the significance of the Gem and Jewellery industry to students
6. Induce participation from students in group activities for upcoming modules
UNIT 1.1: Icebreaker

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, you will be able to:
1. Introduce each other
2. Build rapport with fellow students and the trainer
3. Induce students to take part in group activities
4. Create team building exercises for upcoming modules
5. Understand the students level of knowledge and skill

Resources to be Used
- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens, loose blank paper sheets, permanent marker, safety pins, scissors, 30 blank paper sheets 4 x 2 inches

Do
- Make the students write their first name and initial of their surname on the 4 x 2-inch blank paper sheets and attach it to their clothing with the safety pin.
- Introduce yourself with your name, designation or title, company or organization you represent, experience and qualifications related to the Gem and Jewellery Industry.
- Students should individually introduce themselves to the class and trainer by stating their name, designation or title, company or organization they represent, experience, field related qualifications and what do they expect from the training.
- Make teams comprising of 2 students.

Say
- Ask students to mention on a blank sheet of paper, their expectations from the training, current job and where do they see themselves after completion of this training.
- Thank the students for their participation.
Facilitation Notes

- You could ask the students to speak in the language they are comfortable with.
- Encourage shy students to provide information about themselves by prompting them with questions such as 'what do you enjoy doing the most', 'what is your favourite movie or book' etc.
- You could put a shy student and an extrovert student in 1 team.
- You could ask for a student to act as a translator if you are not well versed with the language of the students for example Tamil, etc.
UNIT 1.2: Gem and Jewellery Sector in India

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to

1. Familiarize themselves with the Gem and Jewellery industry of India
2. Endorse the huge significance of the Gem and Jewellery industry on India’s export market
3. Discuss the market segments for various types of products manufactured by this industry
4. Create awareness of the involvement of this industry in the growth of the India
5. Identify the growth pattern of this industry
6. Discuss about the career growth in this industry

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector
1.2.1: Significance of Gem and Jewellery Sector in India

**Do**

- Present the powerpoint presentation on the Gem and Jewellery industry in India.
- Make students underline important points in the student handbook

**Say**

- With a market size of almost INR 4,54,100 crore, the sector has a large share of the GDP at ~5.9%, apart from large-scale employment generation and foreign exchange earnings.
- Based on economic activities from NIC-2008, major sub-sectors of sector are: processing (diamond, and gemstone), manufacturing (cast and diamond set, and handmade and gem set) and retailing.
- Indian markets for diamond processing - Surat, Ahmedabad; for gemstone processing - Bhavnagar and Jaipur; and for handmade gold jewellery - Kolkata, Thrissur and Coimbatore - are among other areas that are known world over for their products.
- More than two-thirds of the sector work force in India is employed in processing and manufacturing areas of the value chain.
- Employment is concentrated in the states of Rajasthan, Gujarat, Maharashtra, West Bengal and the Southern belt of Kerala and Tamil Nadu.
- Currently, there are about 22 G&J SEZ’s approved under the SEZ Act, 2005, throughout India, out of which, 5 are operational, 4 have valid-in principle approvals and 12 are at the formal approval stage.
- The above areas will require skilled manpower and in line with current employment areas indicating that these areas will continue to be employment destinations for manpower supply.
- Ask students to work within their team and discuss questions before asking you.

**Facilitation Notes**

- Keep notes about the various market segments and market growth in India for discussion within students.
- Employment opportunities in the industry with the job roles available.
**Unit Objectives**

At the end of this unit, students will be able to

1. Explain the jewellery manufacturing process to other students or work colleagues
2. Explain the need for component making in the jewellery manufacturing process
3. Apply procedures to draw wire or strip from bars of precious metal or alloy
4. Apply procedures to make balls from precious metal or alloy
5. Apply procedures for stamping patterns on gold or its alloy
6. Apply procedures to make chain from gold bar

**Resources to be Used**

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens

**Say**

- Ask students to mention their expectations from this program.
- Ask students to write on the whiteboard, one word of jewellery they can relate to

**Facilitation Notes**

- List the expectations of the students on the whiteboard.
- Give the students a brief overview of what all will be covered in the program
1.3.1: Need for Component Making of Jewellery

Say

- To understand the design specification
- To minimize metal damage.
- To make customers feel comfortable when wearing the jewellery piece.
- To make the jewellery product more durable.
- To make the soldering more durable.
- To enhance the jewellery product.
UNIT 1.4: Where does Goldsmith - Component Maker Fall in the Jewellery Making Process

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Deliberate about where component making comes in the jewellery casting process
2. Explain the overview of the jewellery manufacturing process to other students or colleagues
3. Differentiate between casted jewellery and handmade jewellery manufacturing process

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- Computer or laptop attached to LCD projector

Say

- Inform students about the casted jewellery manufacturing process and where the wax setting falls in the process hierarchy.
- Ask each team to mention one part of the casted jewellery manufacturing process.
- Discuss about the casted jewellery market compared to handmade jewellery market.

Facilitation Notes

- List the information received from the students on the whiteboard.
- Give the students a brief overview of the casting jewellery manufacturing process.
- Give the students a brief overview of the handmade jewellery manufacturing process.
A gem and jewellery firm has many divisions in it.
Casted jewellery is one of the main divisions in the firm and has different departments working on different stages of the casted jewellery.
Handmade jewellery is another division which follows different stages compared to casted jewellery except for the design stage.
The design can be developed either by using CAD (Computer Aided Design) or by hand.
In the casting process, once the design is created, a dye is made which is used for producing wax pieces.
In the handmade process, every element is created from the scratch by hand.
In both casted and handmade jewellery, components are required.
Components are created either by using machines or by hand and assembled by following the appropriate procedures.
The other elements of the design with the components are sent to the frame maker to assemble the design.
Pre-polishing and cleaning is done on the metal product.
Stones are set if not already set during wax setting.
The jewellery pieces are then sent for final polish or finish.
The last process is the QC and delivery of the final product.

Component making is a very important job as it is the part where most of the main elements that creates a beautiful jewellery piece is created.
UNIT 1.5: Job Opportunities of a Goldsmith - Component Maker

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Discuss about the job scope of a Goldsmith - Component Maker
2. Refer to the different workplaces a component maker can be employed in or can work in
3. Interact with different organizations about the type of workplace

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens

Facilitation Notes

- List the information received from the students on the whiteboard.
- Give the students a brief overview of the job opportunities for a component maker in the industry.
1.5.1: Job Opportunities for a Component Maker

**Do**
- Ask each student to mention what is their idea of the job scope for a component maker.
- Discuss about the various or different workplaces where a component maker can be employed or can work in.

**Say**
- Goldsmith - Component Makers are also called 'Artisan' or 'Bench-worker' in the industry.
- Job opportunities for a component maker include being a freelancer or having their own business where they take up job work as per the requirements.
- A small-scale firm has less employees and the owner of the firm may also be working with the employees.
- A large-scale firm has more employees working in a designated department for Component Making.
1.5.2: Personal Qualities Required in a Component Maker

- Attention to Details
- Good Eyesight
- Steady Hands
- Ability to Multi Task
- Work Long Hours in a Sitting Position
- Integrity in Dealing With High Value Jewellery

Fig 1.5.2.1: Personal Qualities
2. Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy

Unit 2.1 - Introduction to Jewellery Making Process
Unit 2.2 - Job Work of a Goldsmith - Component Maker
Unit 2.3 - Introduction to Metals
Unit 2.4 - Metal Alloys
Unit 2.5 - Types of Jewellery
Unit 2.6 - Types of Settings
Unit 2.7 - Components or Findings Used in Jewellery Making
Unit 2.8 - Tools and Equipment Required for All Component Making
Unit 2.9 - Drawing Wire from Precious Metal
Unit 2.10 - Making Sheets from Precious Metal
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Identify their knowledge level and explain the job work involved in component making
2. Interpret the job sheet for the job work
3. Select the appropriate tools and equipment
4. Identify the different types of jewellery manufactured in India
5. Identify the various raw materials required for the job work
6. Understand basic and advanced setting styles
7. Acquire intense information about metals and their alloys
8. Identify different kinds of components used in jewellery
9. Draw a wire and make a metal sheet using the appropriate tools
UNIT 2.1: Introduction to Jewellery Making Process

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Explain the jewellery manufacturing processes to colleagues
2. Explain how metal is melted and processed into metal bars
3. Describe the handmade jewellery manufacturing process
4. Describe the casted jewellery manufacturing process
5. Describe the chain making process
6. Gauge their importance in the jewellery manufacturing process chain

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
2.1.1: Jewellery Making Process

Explain

- About the overview of the jewellery manufacturing processes.
- The design creation done manually or with the aid of CAD (Computer Aided Design).
- Melting of gold bullion with alloy is done at the high temperature of 1000°C.
- Metal rods or metal bars are made by pouring molten gold, silver, platinum or other metals into casts for bars and rods.
- The metal rods or metal bars are then used for either of the following or for all:
  - Chains
  - Handmade jewellery
  - Casted jewellery
- Handmade jewellery manufacturing process
- Casted jewellery manufacturing process
- Machine made chain manufacturing process

Field Visit

- Show students the different manufacturing areas in a jewellery factory:
  - Chains
  - Handmade jewellery
  - Casted jewellery
- Show students the metal melting process in a factory (metals will be covered later in this module).
UNIT 2.2: Job Work of a Goldsmith – Component Maker

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Describe their job work to colleagues
2. Use the appropriate terms as per Indian and International market requirements
3. Identify the tools and equipment used for component making
4. Implement learnings of a well-organized work area in their work place
5. Realize the importance of a well-organized and clean work place

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
2.2.1: Introduction of Component Maker

Say

- A Component Maker are also known as "Artisan" or "Bench Worker".
- In India, a component maker or goldsmith is also called as "Karigar".
- Component maker’s job includes wire drawing, metal sheet rolling, creating metal balls, links, clasps, etc.
- The component maker is also responsible for delivering quality metal components with minimum gold loss.
- In the International market, component may also be termed as "Findings".
2.2.2: Know the Machines and Tools Used for Component Making

**Explain**

- Importance of knowing the machines and tools used for making components.
- About the different component making tools
- About the different component making machines
- About the different component making equipment

**Team Activity**

- Ask students to identify minimum 2 tools and machines kept on the trainer’s desk.
- Ask students to discuss their answers with trainer and each other as a team activity.
2.2.3: Preparing the Workplace

**Explain**

- Importance of preparing the workplace before starting the job work.
- The workplace should be properly arranged as well as neat and clean.
- All the required tools to be used by component maker should be available and properly arranged.
- Safety measures like optimizer/ eye goggles, gloves, hair caps, face mask should also be available.
- A dust catching device called the dust collector should be used to collect all the metal dust at the workplace.
- The dust is drawn through a flexible, large diameter hole which is attached to a dust collector or drum.
- This device helps in the process of metal wastage collection, by collecting the dust.
- This dust is then collected, sieved and melted to recover lost metal during the jewellery manufacturing process.
UNIT 2.3: Introduction to Metals

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Know the properties of metals
2. Recognize the physical and chemical properties of gold
3. Recognize the properties of silver
4. Recognize the properties of platinum

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets
- Gold, silver and platinum nuggets, bars, wires, rods
- Gold alloys (12k, 18k, 22k)
- Oxidized silver jewellery
- Platinum jewellery
- Iron hammer, iron rod, steel spoon, thin thread, rubber band, piece of wood, printing paper, bowl of water, 2 ceramic plates, pebble rock, pencil, ice cubes, match box with match sticks, candle
- Aqua Regia
2.3.1: Metal Properties

**Explain**

- Physical properties of metals:
  - Hardness
  - Ductility
  - Malleability
  - Tensile Strength
  - Density
  - Melting Point

**Do**

- Show objects that can help explain the physical properties of metal such as:
  - Iron rod and steel spoon for hardness
    - Try to bend both and re-explaining hardness in metals.
  - Thin thread and rubber band for ductility
    - Pull the thread and rubber band as far as possible and ask students which would break of both, thus re-explaining ductility stating that poor quality rubber band will break.
  - Hammer, piece of wood, thick and thin paper for malleability and tensile strength
    - Hammer the piece of wood and paper separately and re-explain malleability and tensile strength stating that paper will not break but might lose its shape.
    - Paper will tear will it is pulled or the hammer is twisted while hammering the paper.
  - Water in a bowl, pebble rock and pencil
    - Drop the pebble rock and pencil in the bowl of water to re-explain density, where the pencil will float due to low density and the pebble will touch the bottom of the bowl due to heavier density.
  - Ice cube on a plate, match box with match sticks, plate and candle
    - Light the candle and hold it close to the ice cube letting it melt.
    - Light a match stick and keep it next to the melted ice cube.
    - Let the wax which is melting from the candle drop on another plate.
    - Re-explain melting point using the 3 examples above.
2.3.2: Physical Properties of Gold

**Explain**

- Gold is a soft, yellow, corrosion-resistant element and is the most malleable and ductile amongst all noble or precious metals.
- Gold is good thermal and electrical conductor.
- Gold is generally alloyed to increase its strength.
- Alloys can vary and alter the colour of the gold and its strength, more the alloy mixed with gold, lesser the purity of gold one gets.
- 28 grams of gold can be beaten up to a 300 square feet sheet, due to its malleability.
- Physical properties of gold are as follows:
  - Colour
  - Lustre
  - Ductility
  - Malleability
  - Conductivity
  - Solubility
  - Hardness
  - Density
  - Melting point
  - Boiling point

**Do**

- Show a gold bar, gold sheet, gold rod, gold wire, different karatages of gold (22k, 18k, 14k).

**Exercise**

- Ask students to list down why there is a colour difference in the different karatages of gold.
2.3.3: Chemical Properties of Gold

**Explain**

- Chemical properties determine how gold will react with other substances or change from one substance to another.
- Chemical properties are only observable during a chemical reaction.
- Reactions to substances such as alloys can be noticed if burning, rusting, heating, exploding, tarnishing etc. are observed on the jewellery piece.
- Chemical properties of gold are as follows:
  - Chemical Formula
  - Activity
  - Compounds
  - Reactivity with acids
  - Reactivity with Non-metals
  - Alloys

**Do**

- Show samples of gold bar, gold rod, gold wire, gold alloys.

**Demonstrate**

- Gold reacting with Aqua Regia (mixture of nitric and hydrochloric acids).

**Exercise**

- Ask students to list down the 2 common chemical compounds found in gold.
- Discuss the answers regarding the chemical properties of gold.
2.3.4: Silver

**Explain**

- Silver usually occurs in massive form as nuggets or grains, although it may also be found in wiry tree like aggregates.
- Silver is used in many types of Indian jewellery and is not an expensive metal compared to gold or platinum.
- Properties of silver are as follows:
  - Bright, silver white colour
  - Metallic lustre
  - Density
  - Malleability
  - Ductility
  - Melting point
  - Reaction to sulphur and oxygen
  - Alloys

**Do**

- Show samples of silver bar, silver rod, silver wire.
- Show samples of oxidised silver jewellery.

**Exercise**

- Ask students to list down the 2 reasons why silver gets oxidized.
- Discuss the answers regarding oxidation.
2.3.5: Platinum

**Explain**
- Platinum is a dense, expensive, and relatively rare, silvery-white metal.
- Unlike many elements, platinum can be found in its pure metallic form in nuggets, alloyed with other platinum metals, or as part of a mineral ore.
- Many companies use platinum settings as they are more durable compared to gold and prevent the diamond from falling.
- Platinum is used for tension setting of diamonds due to its poor metal memory property of snapping back into place unlike gold which has a good metal memory and holds the new position it is put in.
- Properties of platinum are as follows:
  - Density
  - Malleability
  - Ductility
  - Melting point
  - Boiling point
  - Reaction to acids or chemicals
  - Alloys

**Do**
- Show samples of platinum bar, platinum wire (if available).
- Show samples of Platinum jewellery (if available).

**Exercise**
- Ask students to list down 2 differences between platinum and gold.
- Ask students to list down 2 differences between platinum and silver.
- Discuss the answers.
UNIT 2.4: Metal Alloys

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Understand the meaning and importance of alloys
2. Identify the uses of alloys
3. Anneal and cool alloys and metal as per required procedures
4. Identify the different gold alloys
5. Prepare gold alloys
6. Increase or decrease gold karat as per design requirements using the required formulas
7. Identify the silver alloys
8. Identify the platinum alloys

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets
- Gold, silver and platinum alloys as available in the market
- Pure gold, pure silver, pure platinum (as per availability in the market)
- Copper, zinc, palladium, rhodium
- Calculators
- Weighing scale for metals (up to 1kg calibration)
- Metal melting crucible, furnace, tongs, gloves, face mask, oil, tweezers, picking tongs
- Borax, flux, boric acid, metal cleaning alcohol
- Carbon stirring rod
- Moulds for metal bars and rods
- Cloth attached to a wooden handle dipped in oil
- Ceramic bowl with either cool water, water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution made of sodium bisulphate
- Rhodium plated jewellery

Facilitation Notes

- Demonstration and practical’s should be done in a well-ventilated room.
2.4.1: What is an Alloy?

**Explain**

- Pure gold, also known as fine gold, is a soft gold often available in bullion form.
- Alloy is a metal made by combining two or more metallic elements, especially to give greater strength or resistance to corrosion.
- Gold alloy is gold mixed with other metals for hardness, and this is the product used in jewellery.
- The amount of gold in the mix determines the karat number for example 18 karat gold contains only 18 parts of gold out of 24 parts.
- The process of alloying that is mixing other metals with pure 24 karat gold gives malleable gold more durability, but can also be used to change its colour.
- Technically there is no such thing as 'White Gold.'
- Gold can be lightened by combining it with light metals but we plate most pieces with Rhodium; a member of the platinum family and the whitest precious metal after silver.

**Demonstrate**

- Show students how to calibrate and use the weighing scale.
- Show students how to use the furnace, crucible, tongs, oil the moulds, mix borax/flux/boric acid during melting, carbon stirring rod.
- Show students how to note the weight, alloy details and karat requirements to avoid any errors during the melting process.
- Show them the different alloys that are available in the market and how to use them by calculating their weight as per karatage requirement.
2.4.2: Annealing and Cooling Alloyed Metal

**Explain**

- The further one reduces the metal thickness the harder it gets and less malleable it becomes.
- If not annealed properly, the metal fractures or becomes too hard to work.
- Before annealing gold (or silver), coat the piece with boric acid and alcohol.
- This flux coating will reduce oxidation and help minimize clean-up.
- The secret to proper annealing is to bring the metal up to a hot enough temperature long enough to cause annealing.
- The best annealing can be done in a pre-heated furnace for approximately 15 minutes at the recommended temperatures.
- There are several choices available for cooling the alloyed metal.
- All 10K alloys and 14K white should be cooled in water, water plus de-saturated alcohol or a pickle solution based on sodium bisulphate.
- Cooling low karat and 14K white alloys into dilute acid solutions may result in stress corrosion.
- All other alloys may be cooled with the above or dilute acid solutions such as 10% sulphuric acid or 5% nitric acid.

**Demonstrate**

- Annealing and cooling of alloyed metals using the appropriate materials, tools, equipment and the correct method for annealing and cooling.

**Team Activity**

- Ask students to melt metals with alloys (small quantities) and make one metal bar and one metal rod in teams of 2.
- Ask students to practice annealing and cooling starting with silver and then gold.
- Ask students to practice annealing and cooling of platinum alloy in teams of 4.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Annealing and cooling</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>Gold, silver and platinum alloys as available in the market, Pure gold, pure silver, pure platinum (as per available in the market), Copper, zinc, palladium, rhodium, Calculators, Weighing scale for metals (up to 1kg calibration), Metal melting crucible, furnace, tongs, gloves, face mask, oil, tweezers, picking tongs, Borax, flux, boric acid, metal cleaning alcohol, Carbon stirring rod, Moulds for metal bars and rods, Cloth attached to a wooden handle dipped in oil, Ceramic bowl with either cool water, water with de-saturated alcohol, pickle solution made of sodium bisulphate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4.3: Alloyed Gold Types

**Explain**

- Apart from copper, all other alloying metals for gold will tend to whiten the colour, so it is possible to make karat gold into white gold.
- Additions of any white metal to gold could potentially bleach its colour.
- Normally, nickel and platinum are strong 'bleachers' of gold; silver and zinc are moderate bleachers and all others are moderate to weak.
- This has given rise to 2 basic classes of white golds - the Nickel whites and the Palladium white.
- Nickel alloying suffers from "Fire Cracking".
- Many people are allergic to nickel when it comes in contact with the skin and this gives rise to a red skin rash or irritation.
- The rules on nickel alloy in Europe and US differ and one should follow the guidelines of the country where the export of the products will be done to.
- Commercial palladium or platinum white gold only contain about 6-8% platinum or palladium plus silver, zinc and copper.
- These may also have a less white colour and may be required to be rhodium plated.

**Exercise**

- Ask students to mention any 2 alloys used with gold and how do they affect the gold.
2.4.4: How to Make Gold Alloy

Demonstrate

- Weigh metals carefully in the proportions listing in gold alloying tables (the larger the amount prepared, the more accurate the karat the resulting gold alloy will be).
- Work out the formulas for increasing or decreasing gold karatage using the formulas mentioned in the participant handbook.
- Soak all metals to make sure they are all thoroughly cleaned.
- Mix the metals, except the gold, in a crucible fluxed with borax.
- Melt the metals with a reducing flame (starting with the highest melting point of metal).
- Do not bring the metal to a boil.
- Stir constantly with a carbon stirring rod.
- Keep the metal molten and add the fine gold.
- Pour the molten gold alloy into an oiled ingot mould or depression formed in a charcoal block.
- If the resulting gold alloy is brittle when later worked, this will indicate impurities.
- Streaks of colour will indicate that the alloy was not mixed properly and may have to be re-melted and remixed with a carbon stirring rod.
2.4.5 How to Increase or Decrease Gold Karat

Practical

- Ask students to make gold alloy using the steps mentioned during the demonstration.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make gold alloy by using formulas for increasing or decreasing karatage</td>
<td>6 hours</td>
<td>Gold nuggets, gold alloy, copper, silver, palladium, weighing scale, calculator, metal melting crucible, borax, flux, boric acid, furnace, tongs for pouring molten metal, moulds for bar and rods, cloth dipped in oil, carbon stirring rod, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4.6: Silver Alloy

**Explain**

- Sterling silver contains 92.5% silver, and the rest copper and zinc.
- Britannica silver contains 95.8% silver, and the rest copper and zinc.
- Coin silver contains 90% silver and 10% copper.
- Vermeil and German silver are some other silver alloys used in jewellery.
- Vermeil is a combination having the inside core of pure sterling silver and the outside is a solid coating of finely crafted 14 karat gold.

**Practical**

- Ask students to make silver alloy using the steps mentioned during the demonstration for gold alloy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make silver alloy by using formulas for raising or lowering karatage</td>
<td>6 hours</td>
<td>Silver nuggets, silver alloy, copper, zinc, weighing scale, calculator, metal melting crucible, borax, flux, boric acid, furnace, tongs for pouring molten metal, moulds for bar and rods, cloth dipped in oil, carbon stirring rod, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.4.7: Platinum Alloy

**Explain**

- To enhance its characteristics and durability, platinum is alloyed with copper and cobalt along with 'platinum group' metals, such as palladium, rhodium and iridium.
- The main advantage of platinum as a metal for jewellery is its resistance to tarnish and its strength.
- Pure platinum melts at 1769°C.
- Ruthenium, rhodium, palladium, osmium, iridium, and platinum together make up the platinum group of metals.
UNIT 2.5: Types of Jewellery

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Identify the different types of jewellery
2. Identify the unique type of jewellery manufactured only in India
3. Explain the process of creating the unique type of jewellery manufactured only in India
4. Relate to the local Indian terms used for jewellery manufacturing

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets
- Different types of jewellery samples (as per participant handbook)
2.5.1: Types of Indian Jewellery

Elaborate

- The different types of jewellery and their significance:
  - Antique Jewellery
  - Bead Jewellery
  - Bridal Jewellery
  - Custom or Customized Jewellery
  - Filigree Jewellery
  - Plain Gold Jewellery
  - Jadau Jewellery
  - Kundan Jewellery
  - Lac or lacquer Jewellery
  - Minakari or Meenakari Jewellery
  - Dokra or Dhokra Jewellery
  - Fusion Jewellery
  - Thewa Jewellery
  - Navratna Jewellery
  - Temple Jewellery
  - Bikaneri Jewellery (also called kundan)
  - Pachchikam Jewellery
  - Silver Iodized Jewellery

Activity

- Ask students to identify and list down the type of jewellery displayed on the trainer’s desk.
- Trainer to discuss the answers with entire class.
2.5.2: Categories of Jewellery

Elaborate

- The different categories of jewellery and their significance:
  - Head Ornaments
  - Neck Ornaments
  - Hand and Arm Ornaments
  - Body Ornaments
  - Leg and Feet Ornaments

Activity

- Ask students to identify and list down the category of jewellery displayed on the trainer’s desk.
- Trainer to discuss the answers with entire class.
UNIT 2.6: Types of Settings

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Identify the basic and advanced setting techniques for diamonds and gemstones
2. Identify which setting is risky and difficult to work with
3. Identify potential defects that may arise from certain settings
4. Categorize the different terms of settings used in the Indian as well as International market

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Jewellery samples of different setting styles
- Blank sheets of paper
2.6.1: Types of Settings

**Team Activity**
- Ask teams to list the different setting styles.
- Ask teams to discuss pros and cons of each setting style with each other and trainer.

**Learning Outcomes**
- Identification of different setting styles and their pros and cons.
- Die struck method is one of the best methods to create sturdy and strong setting heads.
- Casting method is also used for making setting heads, but may not be as durable as die struck manufactured pieces.
- A component maker will also have to make components such as prong findings, setting heads, links for settings.
- It is important to read the job sheet to know the metal type, karatage and weight of the jewellery before starting to work on setting components.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identification of basic and advanced setting styles</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Jewellery samples of different setting styles, Blank sheets of paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Summary**
- Students should be able to identify the basic and advanced setting styles.
UNIT 2.7: Components or Findings Used in Jewellery Making

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Identify the different types of components or findings used in jewellery making
2. Identify the best manufacturing process or method to make components
3. Create components in gold, silver and platinum
4. Recognize the use of each finding
5. Understand the importance of a component and its significance in jewellery

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Different types of components used for different categories of jewellery
- Blank sheets of paper
2.7.1: Introduction to Components or Findings

**Explain**

- Jewellery is created by joining precious metal segments or parts by soldering or welding them into position.
- Components used in jewellery manufacturing range from heads, cages, or prongs needed for setting stones, to clasps, clutches, and earring posts that are important for the functioning of the jewellery piece.
2.7.2: Types of Components or Findings

**Team Activity**

- Make teams of 2.
- Ask teams to list the type of component they know.
- Ask teams to mention the usage of the component i.e. for what are they used.
- Ask teams to discuss pros and cons of each component with each other and trainer.
- Trainer to discuss each component with entire class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identification of types of components or findings</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Samples of different types of components, Blank sheets of paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Summary**

- Students should be able to identify the different types of components.
UNIT 2.8: Tools and Equipment Required for All Component Making

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Identify the different types of tools and equipment required for component making
2. Identify the tools and equipment used to create wires
3. Identify the tools and equipment used to create metal sheets
4. Identify the tools for layout of design
5. Identify the appropriate tools and equipment used to create different kinds of components
6. Differentiate between component making tools and soldering tools

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Rolling mill (dual purpose), wire drawing machine, draw plates, gauges, mandrels or sticks, pliers, magnifying lens, dapping punch set, metal stamping tool set, files, saw frames with saw blades, hammers, bench pin, sandpaper or polishing paper and sticks, flex shaft, wire cutter, callipers or measuring gauges, ring clamp, metal rulers, scribes, compass, dividers, drilling tools, coiling tool, metal wire, cup bur tools, tweezers, bending blocks or swage, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water
- Copper rods - 3 per student
- Blank sheets of paper
2.8.1: Rolling Mill – Dual Purpose

**Explain**

- This machine is used for making metal sheets and thick wires.
- The machine is used for two purposes:
  - One part of the mill is used for sheets
  - Other part of the mill is used for wires
- It is also used to reduce the thickness of the sheet and wire.
- The metal that is going to be used should be annealed and cooled so that it can be made into a sheet and a wire without breaking.

**Demonstrate**

- Timely annealing and cooling of metal before making the sheet and wire.
- Use of both parts of the rolling mill using a copper rod.

**Practical**

- Ask students to make 2 sheets.
- Ask students to make a metal rod with 1 sheet which is thick enough for making a wire.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rolling mill</td>
<td>1.5 hours</td>
<td>Rolling mill, both parts of the rolling mill, copper rod, flame torch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.2: Wire Drawing Machine and Draw Plate

**Explain**

- A Draw Bench is a bench which is used for pulling metal wires.
- A Draw Plate which has different size holes (as per metal thickness required) is used either by hand or on a draw bench.
- When pulling small wires, a draw bench is not used.
- Draw bench is used for pulling long wires.
- The draw bench has a mounting area where the draw plate is mounted, the metal wire is pulled using draw tongs which are attached to the belt on the bench.
- If there is a motorized draw bench, please read the operating instructions before using the machine.

**Demonstrate**

- Use of wire drawing machine and draw plate with the earlier made copper rod.

**Practical**

- Ask students to make 2 wires from the 1 rod after it is thin enough to cut into 2.
- Ask students to make 1 wire using the draw bench.
- Ask students to make 1 wire using the draw plates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wire drawing</td>
<td>1.5 hours</td>
<td>Draw bench/ machine, draw plate, tongs for holding the wire, copper wire, plier for cutting the wire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not for Sale- For Internal Circulation only
2.8.3: Gauges

**Explain**

- Gauges are used for measuring the ring size and bangle or bracelet size.
- This helps when change of size is required before using the actual jewellery piece on a mandrel.
- A component maker needs to use this gauge in case of making additional links or new setting heads.

**Demonstrate**

- Use of ring and bangle gauge.

**Practical**

- Ask students to take the measurement of their ring finger with the ring sizer and note down the size.
- Ask students to take the measurement of their wrist with the bangle sizer and note down the size.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using ring and bangle gauge</td>
<td>0.50 hours</td>
<td>Ring gauge, bangle gauge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.4: Mandrels or Sticks

Explain

- Mandrels or sticks are used for measuring the ring size or bangle or bracelet size.
- These are used when a jewellery piece needs to be re-sized.
- The jewellery piece is placed on the mandrel, cut and adjusted as per size and soldered to the new size.
- This is an important tool for a component maker as plain rings and bangles are made directly from the metal sheets by wrapping the metal around the mandrel as per the ring or bangle size and then soldering it.

Demonstrate

- Cut the metal sheet made earlier into 2 pieces.
- Thickness should be 0.25cm.
- If thickness is more, use the rolling mill to make it as per required thickness.
- Further cut the metal sheet into 2 parts:
  - 1st part will be 1cm x 15cm for the bangle
  - 2nd part will be 0.5cm x 4cm for the ring
- Use the bangle and ring mandrel and wrap the metal sheet using a hammer.

Practical

- Ask students to follow the demonstration steps with the aid of the bangle and ring mandrels or sticks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using ring and bangle mandrel</td>
<td>1.50 hours</td>
<td>Ring mandrel, bangle mandrel, metal sheets of 1cm x 15cm and 0.5cm x 4cm, hammer, rolling mill</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.5: Pliers

**Explain**

- Each plier has a different application.
- Use the appropriate plier while pulling wires, bending metal or cutting metal wires.
- The Draw Tongs are used for pulling wires which are hard to pull, they are also used on draw benches.

**Demonstrate**

- Cut a small piece of wire with the side cutter plier and use the other pliers to work on the cut wire.
- Use of draw tongs.

**Practical**

- Ask students to cut a metal wire using the cutting plier.
- Ask students to practice using the other types of plier on the wire cut.
- Ask students to use the draw tongs with a draw plate.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using pliers</td>
<td>0.50 hours</td>
<td>Plier set, metal wire, tongs, draw plate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.6: Magnifying Lens

**Explain**
- These are available as head gears or as hand tools.
- The loupe is available in 10 times magnification (10x), 20x and 30x.
- Loupes are held with one hand and can be easy if you know how to use it.
- Loupes are held in front of one eye while checking the jewellery piece.
- Magnifying lens such as the head lens or the Optivisor are attached with the head band to your forehead.
- They come with additional lens for higher magnification.
- The head magnifying lens can help you work with both your hands while magnifying the jewellery piece.

**Demonstrate**
- Usage of loupe.
- Usage of magnifying lens.

**Practical**
- Ask students to practise looking at the metal wire using the loupe and the head magnifying lens.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loupe and magnifying lens</td>
<td>0.50 hours</td>
<td>10x loupe, 20x loupe, magnifying lens (optivisor), metal wire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.7: Dapping Punch Set

**Explain**

- The dapping punch set is used for giving curves to a metal sheet.
- The cube or block has different diameter sizes on which a metal sheet is placed for hammering into a semi-circle.
- This set is used when making balls or beads for jewellery.

**Demonstrate**

- Cut a round or square shape using a saw blade.
- Usage of dapping punch set on a metal sheet.

**Practical**

- Ask students to cut the metal sheet into a shape of their choice using a saw blade.
- Ask students use the dapping punch set on the metal sheet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dapping punch set</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, dapping punch set, saw frame attached with saw blade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 2.8.8: Metal Stamping

#### Explain
- Metal stamping can mean stamping the logo of the company, karat or purity stamp, country of origin stamp or stamping messages.
- Metal stamping also means stamping of coins which is done with the help of the die struck method, where large machines stamp thick metal sheets.
- Metal stamping of jewellery does not need large machines.
- It can be done using hand tools and a mounting tape.

#### Demonstrate
- Cut a small strip of metal from the metal sheet using a saw blade.
- Tape the metal strip on ceramic or any other material that is hard and not soft.
- Lightly tap the stamp as per requirement using the hammer on the metal strip.

#### Practical
- Ask students to follow the steps mentioned in the demonstrate section above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metal stamping</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal sheet, saw blade, ceramic block, small hammer, stamping kit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.9: Files

Explain

- Files are made of steel or iron or other metal.
- They are used to file a component piece to give it a proper shape by removing or filing sharp edges or extra metal.

Demonstrate

- Cut a piece of wire and a small piece of metal sheet.
- Use all the files on the metal pieces to show the difference in the filing types.

Practical

- Ask students to follow the steps mentioned in the demonstrate section above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filing</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal sheet, metal wire, plier, saw blade, file set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.10: Saw Frame and Blades

**Explain**

- Saw frames and blades are used for cutting a metal sheet.
- Be careful when using the blades as they can cut into your fingers.
- Use gloves whenever possible while using saw blades.
- The saw blade should be at 90 degrees to the metal sheet while cutting to ensure proper cutting.
- The saw blades come in different sizes, thickness and blade teeth.

**Demonstrate**

- Since the students have already started using the saw blade, show them how to change the blade and the different types of blades and its uses.
- Use of the saw blade with a work bench.
- Using the saw blade to cut intricate designs using the correct method of cutting at 90 degrees to the metal sheet.

**Practical**

- Ask students to cut a metal sheet piece in the shape of a flower.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Saw blade and cutting metal</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, saw blade, work bench</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.11: Hammers

**Explain**

- There are different types of hammers used for jewellery manufacturing.
- The heads of the hammer serve different purposes.
- There are some hammers which have separate finishing heads for textures.

**Demonstrate**

- Use of different types of hammers for stamping, finish, bending.

**Practical**

- Ask students to use the different types of hammers on a metal sheet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hammering</td>
<td>1.5 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, hammer set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.12: Bench Pin

**Explain**

- A bench pin is a removable tool which is attached to the edge of the bench.
- Depending on the type of work, the bench pin can be changed.
- Bench pins are used for pre-polishing, setting, cutting and holding the ring clamp.

**Demonstrate**

- Attaching a bench pin to a work bench.
- Using the bench pin for sawing or cutting purposes.
- Using the bench pin for filing purposes.
- Using the bench pin for holding the ring clamp.

**Practical**

- Ask students to use the different types of hammers on a metal sheet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Attaching the bench pin</td>
<td>1.5 hours</td>
<td>Bench pin, work bench, ring clamp, file set, metal sheet, saw frame and blade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.13: Sandpaper or Polishing Paper and Sticks

**Explain**

- Sandpapers or polishing papers are important tools while making jewellery components.
- The grit rating system and how to choose the right sandpaper for the job.
- The numbering system on the sandpaper and sandpaper sticks.
- 3M brand micron graded papers and standard grit rated papers are usually used.
- The chart in the participant handbook and how the systems overlap.
- The larger the grit number, the finer the sandpaper.
- However, the micron rated papers are the opposite: the smaller the micron number, the finer the sandpaper.
- If one chooses the wrong paper, they can scratch the jewellery piece.

**Demonstrate**

- Direction of working with a sandpaper or polishing paper and stick.
- Different types of sandpaper as per their grit and micron rating and their effects on metal.

**Practical**

- Ask students to use the different types of sandpaper or polishing paper and sticks on a metal sheet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sandpaper or polishing paper and stick</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, different types of sandpaper or polishing paper and sticks as per microns and grit numbers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.14: Flex Shaft

**Explain**

- Flex shafts are very useful tools for manufacturing of jewellery components.
- They come with different attachments which can be used for drilling setting seats, making holes in metal sheets, burnishing, polishing interior areas of closed frames.

**Demonstrate**

- Drill holes in metal sheet.
- Polish interior areas of components.
- Making the inner seat for a bezel setting.
- Correct method of holding a flex shaft.

**Practical**

- Ask students to follow the instructions mentioned in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Flex shaft</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, casted metal components, bezel setting heads, flex shaft with all attachments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.15: Wire Cutter

**Explain**

- Wire cutter is part of the set of pliers.
- The wire cutter has two sides:
  - Flat
  - Bevelled (cut corner) side
- Depending on the design requirement and work requirement, use the sides accordingly.

**Demonstrate**

- Cut wires using both sides of the wire cutters.

**Practical**

- Ask students to follow the instructions mentioned in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wire cutter</td>
<td>0.5 hour</td>
<td>Metal wire, wire cutter set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.16: Callipers or Measuring Gauges

**Explain**

- Callipers or measuring gauges are used for measuring the length, width and thickness of metal.
- It is also used for measuring setting components.
- There are different types of callipers and measuring gauges available in the market, use the ones that you are comfortable with and which give you the accurate reading.

**Demonstrate**

- Measuring metal sheet and wire length, width and thickness.
- Measuring setting components.

**Practical**

- Ask students to measure metal sheet and wire length, width and thickness.
- Ask students to measure various setting components such as setting heads, ring shanks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Callipers or measuring gauges</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal wire, metal sheet, callipers or measuring gauges, unset metal jewellery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.17: Ring Clamp

**Explain**

- A ring clamp is used to hold a metal sheet or a wire during the filing and cutting process.
- The ring clamp can be attached to the bench or held with the hand while working.
- There are different types of ring clamps available in the market.

**Demonstrate**

- Filing a metal sheet held with a ring clamp.
- Attaching ring clamp to bench pin or work bench.

**Practical**

- Ask students to hold a metal sheet using a ring clamp and its attachments.
- Ask students to attach ring clamp to a work bench.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Using a ring clamp</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal wire, metal sheet, ring clamp, bench pin, work bench, file set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.18: Tools for Layout of Design

**Explain**

- Metal rulers, scribes, compass and dividers are used during the layout process of the component design on a metal sheet.
- The metal ruler is used for measuring the design along with the help of the compass.
- Scribes are used for etching the design on the metal.
- Dividers and compass have the same purpose.

**Demonstrate**

- Measuring a design from paper onto a metal sheet using a ruler and a divider or compass.
- Etching the design on a metal sheet using a scribe tool.

**Practical**

- Ask students to follow the instructions mentioned in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Layout of design</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Metal wire, metal sheet, metal ruler, scribe set, compass or divider, design printed on paper with measurements mentioned</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.19: Drilling Tools

**Explain**

- Hand drills and small drill bits are used for drilling holes in the metal manually.
- In India, we use the bow drill for the same purpose.
- However, the advanced flex shafts available today, can also drill holes.

**Demonstrate**

- Drilling holes in a metal sheet using hand drills and small drills.
- Bow drill working mechanism.
- Drilling holes with advanced flex shaft.

**Practical**

- Ask students drill holes in a metal sheet using the hand drill, small drill, bow drill and advanced flex shaft.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Drilling</td>
<td>1.5 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, hand drill, small drills, bow drill, advanced flex shaft with drilling tool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.20: Coiling Tool

**Explain**
- The coiling tool is an excellent tool for coiling a metal wire from a spool to make jump rings or round metal links.
- It is also useful for making tiny spiral beads.
- Read the instruction manual to understand how the tool works.
- In India, metal wires are spun in large coiling machines as per the size of the metal link requirements.

**Demonstrate**
- Manual operation of coiling tool using metal wire from a spool.
- Cutting of individual jump rings and metal links with a wire cutter from the coiled metal.

**Practical**
- Ask students to follow the instructions as shown in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Coiling</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Metal wire, spool, metal wire, wire cutter, coiling tool</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.21: Metal Wire Spools

**Explain**

- Metal wire spools having thin metal wires are available in the market.
- These are used with the coiling tool or on their own to make components.

**Demonstrate**

- Making a twisted link with the metal wire from the metal wire spool.

**Practical**

- Ask students to follow the instructions as shown in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Metal wire spool uses</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal wire spool, wire cutter, file set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.22: Cup Bur Tools

**Explain**
- The Cup Bur tool is used for rounding the edge of the metal wire.
- When cutting a metal wire, always file it after cutting and finish it with a cup bur so that the wire does not have any sharp edges.

**Demonstrate**
- Cut a piece of wire and use the cup bur tool to round the edge of the metal wire.
- Use different widths of wire to demonstrate the different sizes of cup burs.

**Practical**
- Ask students to follow the instructions as shown in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cup bur tool</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal wire of different widths, cup bur tool set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.23: Tweezers

Explain

- There are different types of tweezers used in jewellery making and is not limited to any one department.
- These will however not include the stone tweezers.

Demonstrate

- Placing a piece of alloy on metal sheet with holes for soldering using a tweezer.
- Solder the alloy and metal using a flame torch.
- Use tweezers to pick metal and dip it into the ceramic bowl with water.

Practical

- Ask students to follow the instructions as shown in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tweezers</td>
<td>0.5 hour</td>
<td>Alloy sheets cut into tiny bits, metal sheets with holes, tweezers, ceramic bowl with water, flame torch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.8.24: Bending Blocks or Swage

**Explain**

- Bending blocks or swage are used for making metal pipes.
- These are used to hammer metal sheets as per the size requirement.
- Once the sheets are hammered and rounded or rolled they are soldered to be used in jewellery.
- The rolled sheets are also used for making machine made chains.

**Demonstrate**

- Place a metal sheet on the bending block and hammer to a medium size.

**Practical**

- Ask students to follow the instructions as shown in the demonstrate section.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bending blocks or swage</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Metal sheets, bending blocks or swage set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 2.9: Drawing Wire from Precious Metal

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Anneal and cool the metal to avoid breakage
2. Handle the rolling mill
3. Draw wire from precious metal
4. Make different sizes of wires
5. Use the appropriate tools and equipment for drawing wire

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Rolling mill - Dual purpose, draw bench or draw plates, metal rods, pliers or tongs to pull wire, gloves, cloth, beeswax or grease, hammer, files
- Blank sheets of paper
2.9.1: Wire Drawing Machines and Tools

Ask

- Which machines are used for drawing wires?

Say

- To make the wire, first put the metal rod in the rolling mill to make a 10-gauge wire.
- Annealing of the wire should be avoided at the 1st stage, since it has already been heated before.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make 10-gauge wire</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Metal rod, rolling mill with wire part attached</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.9.2: Anneal the Metal Wire

**Explain**

- Anneal the wire when the wire is half the size of the original thickness.
- Then place the wire again in the rolling mill to make a 16-gauge wire.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make 16-gauge wire</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>10-gauge wire, rolling mill with wire part attached, flame torch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.9.3: Post Annealing

**Explain**

- After annealing put the wire again through the rollers to make it thinner.
- This is done by making the gaps between the rollers smaller.
- Once the required thickness is achieved then we need to use the draw plates.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make 20-gauge wire</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>16-gauge wire, rolling mill with wire part attached, flame torch</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.9.4: Using the Wire Draw Bench and Draw Plate

Explain

- Once the wire has been made thin, it is then passed through a Draw Plate.
- A draw plate is a tool through which has different gauge sizes.
- When using a draw plate, start with the size that is the largest and then move to the thinnest size.
- You will need to mount the draw plate on something sturdy and use a plier to pull the wire.
- The wire is inserted into the draw plate from the backside and then pulled from the front side.
- If the metal has an alloy problem, there will be cracks on the metal.
- Anneal the wire before using the draw plates and make it straight by hammering it.
- Form a tapered shape at one end of the wire by filing to form a grip.
- Filing makes it easier to draw the wire through the hole in the drawplates.
- Maintain the wire plate by using beeswax.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Make 24-gauge wire</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>20-gauge wire, pliers or tongs to pull wire, gloves, cloth, beeswax or grease, draw bench or draw plate, hammer, files</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.9.5: Check the Thickness of the Wire

**Explain**

- Keep checking the diameter of the wire with a wire gauge, so it does not become thin from the desired size.
- The required thickness of the wire is now ready to be used.
2.9.6: Filing the Wire

**Explain**

- After achieving the required thickness of wire, it should be filed and rounded with a cup bur tool.
- If rounding of edge of wire is not required, then there is no need to use the cup bur tool.
- Filing can be done using a file or sand paper.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filing wire</td>
<td>0.5 hour</td>
<td>20-gauge wire, files, cup bur tools</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not for Sale- For Internal Circulation only
2.9.7: Uses of Wire

Explain

- Wires are used for soldering purposes as well as for designs requiring wire work such as filigree.
- Wires are also coiled around to make various components including jump rings by cutting them.
- Make sure the wire is made straight by using a flat tweezer or plier.

Summary

- When working with wire, always remember the annealing process must be done at regular intervals.
- If the annealing and cooling is not done as per the metal properties, it will make the metal brittle.
- Wires that are drawn through rusted draw plates can also create problems.
- Make sure that the draw plates are regularly maintained by applying wax.
- Also, make sure that the draw bench is in working condition.
- Use the right tweezer or plier for straightening the wire before coiling it.
- We get only 22-24 gauge square wires from the rolling mill than can be used with the wire drawing machine to get different sizes and shapes of wire as per design requirement.
UNIT 2.10: Making Sheets from Precious Metal

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Anneal and cool the metal to avoid breakage
2. Handle the rolling mill
3. Make sheets from precious metal
4. Make different sizes of metals
5. Use the appropriate tools and equipment for making metal sheets

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Rolling mill, metal rod, files set, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water, sandpaper
- Blank sheets of paper
2.10.1: Wire Drawing Machines and Tools

**Explain**

- There are two rollers attached on the inner side of the mill.
- One part is the roller for making metal sheets and the other part is the roller for making wires.
- The 2 adjusting wheels - one for sheet and other for wire are used to adjust for gaps in between the two rollers.

**Demonstrate**

- Attaching both the rollers.
- Adjustment of rollers.
- Inserting rod between the wire roller.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rolling mill</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Rolling mill, metal rod, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water, beeswax or grease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.10.2: Making Metal Sheet

**Explain**

- Insert the metal sheet from one side in between both the rollers and adjust the tightening wheel on top of the machine to make the required size of metal sheet.
- The metal sheet will come out from the other side of the rolling mill.

**Demonstrate**

- Adjustment of rollers as per thickness of metal.
- Inserting the metal sheet and tightening the adjustment wheel.
- Rolling the rollers so that sheet comes out from the other side.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Making metal sheet</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Rolling mill, metal rod, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water, beeswax or grease</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.10.3: Filing of Metal Sheet

**Explain**

- Metal sheets like metal wires also need to be filed and cleaned.
- Metal sheets are used for the main design etching of the jewellery.
- Filing can be done by using files or sandpaper.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filing metal sheet</td>
<td>0.5 hour</td>
<td>Metal sheet, files, sandpaper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Summary**

- When working with a metal sheet, always remember that the annealing process must be done at regular intervals.
- If the annealing and cooling is not done as per the metal properties, it will make the metal brittle.
- File and clean the metal sheets thoroughly as it is the main element for making a design as well as a component.
3. Make Balls from Precious Metal or Alloy

Unit 3.1 – Make the Balls or Beads
Unit 3.2 – File the Ball Segments
Unit 3.3 – Bead Making Machines
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Prepare the metal sheet for cutting out required shapes
2. Select the appropriate tools and equipment for shaping
3. Shape the beads as per design requirements
4. Create half spheres
5. Solder the precious metal balls
6. Create solid metal beads
7. File the precious metal balls and beads
8. Clean the metal balls and beads
9. Polish the metal balls and beads
10. Buff or give final finish to metal balls and beads
11. Operate a chain making machine
12. Explain how machine made chains are manufactured
13. Detect product defects
14. Repair product defects
15. Report unrepairable defects to the supervisor
UNIT 3.1: Make the Balls or Beads

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Create precious metal balls
2. Create precious metal beads
3. Identify the appropriate tools and equipment for creating precious metal balls and beads

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Metal sheets, saw frame with blades, metal shape cutter having different shapes and different sizes, dapping punch set, soldering alloy sheet and wire, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate, soldering block, soldering block with holes, tweezers
- Blank sheets of paper
3.1.1: Preparing the Metal Sheet

**Explain**
- To start work on making metal balls or beads, we need to first prepare the metal sheet.
- Take a metal sheet as per required thickness as mentioned in the job sheet.
- File and clean the metal sheet.
- Use a saw blade or shape cutter to make the required shape sheets of required size.

**Steps – Cutting Metal Sheet**

**STEP 1:** Cut metal sheet with saw blade or shape cutter

**STEP 2:** Acquire the desired shape

**Practical**
- Ask students to cut a metal sheet to acquire 3 pairs different shapes of different sizes as per the mentioned steps.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cutting metal sheet</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, saw frame with blade, shape cutter, work bench, bench pin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.2: Tools Required for Shaping

- For shaping the metal sheets, we need to use the Dapping Punch tool set.
- The tools are used to give the metal a rounded shape like a half bead.
- Shapes that are common in the market include round, oval, heart, square and other geometrical shapes.
- This shaping helps in creating hollow interiors while the exterior is made of metal, hence it is important to keep in mind the thickness of the metal.
- You will also require a hammer for the hammering.
- The square metal tool or the wooden square metal tool is called the Cube.
- The rounded tools are called Punches.
- The cube and punches have different sizes.
- When starting with a metal sheet, use the largest dent in the cube with a size smaller punch.
- The metal cube will make the metal surface dull whereas the wooden cube will make the metal surface smooth.
- Choose the type of cube depending on the metal softness.
3.1.3: Shaping the Metal

Demonstrate

- After cutting the metal, use the Dapping Punch Set.
- In the Cube, place the metal in the largest dent and hammer it lightly with a punch of a slightly smaller size than the dent size.
- Turn the metal sheet at different angles to get it rounded evenly from all sides.
- Tell students to remember, that they are not making a complete ball here, but are only making a half sphere or half ball.
- Once the metal is rounded, put it in a smaller dent and follow the same steps of punching it.
- Keep putting in smaller dents till the diameter required is achieved.
- Explain if metal is punched too hard, the metal thickness will become less, so keep checking the metal thickness.

Steps – Shaping the Metal

STEP 1: Place metal in larger dent and hammer

STEP 2: Put in a smaller dent and keep hammering lightly

Practical

- Ask students to follow the steps shown the demonstrate session and make 3 pairs of half sphere of different sizes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shaping metal</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Cut metal sheets, dapping punch set</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.4: Half Sphere

**Elaborate**

- If student has chosen the right dent in the cube, they will get a perfect half sphere.
- If they have chosen the wrong dent in the cube, they will have extra metal around the half sphere.
- In the case of extra metal, they will need to saw the extra metal, which will lead to metal loss.
- If they see metal has cracked, then the metal impurities have not been removed while melting the metal.

**Ask**

- Ask students to check for extra metal around the half sphere.
- Ask students to check if metal has cracked.
- Ask students to saw off the extra metal with a saw blade.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Half sphere</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Half spheres, saw frame with blade, bench pin, work bench</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.1.5: Solder the Domes

### Demonstrate

- Before soldering the domes, file the edges to make sure the 2 half spheres meet together without any gap.
- Solder the 2 half spheres together using solder alloy and flame torch.
- Pick the soldered domes with a tweezer and put into ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate to cool.

### Practical

- Ask students to follow the steps shown the demonstrate session and make 3 complete spheres.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solder the domes</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Half spheres, files, work bench, bench pin, solder alloy sheet or wire, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate, tweezer, cloth, soldering block</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Summary**

- The sphere beads will be hollow from inside.
3.1.6: Making Solid Beads

**Demonstrate**

- Keep a soldering table or block with holes in it.
- Place metal and alloy pieces together and heat it with a blow or heat torch.
- To make sure the metal does not stick to the table, lift it with a needle or fine tipped tweezer and drop it in the hole while removing the needle with the blow torch.
- Once melting is completed, remove the solid piece and put into water to cool down.

**Steps – Making Solid Beads**

**STEP 1:** Heat the plain metal and place a solder alloy piece on top of it

**STEP 2:** Push a steel pin or tip of tweezer through the metal, twist and remove to make easy removal of the bead later

**STEP 3:** Adjust bead size by adding or removing metal when molten

**STEP 4:** Allow metal to solidify, push pin or tweezer slightly to make a hole, remove
Practical

- Ask students to follow the steps shown in the demonstration session and make 15 solid beads of different sizes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Solid beads</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Metal, solder alloy pieces, steel pin, fine tip tweezer, soldering block with holes, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate, cloth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 3.2: File the Ball Segments

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. File the ball segments
2. Clean the ball segments
3. Buff the ball segments
4. Polish the ball segments

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Soldered balls, solid beads, file set, cleaning acid or solution, tweezer, buff machine, gloves
- Blank sheets of paper
3.2.1: Clean, Buff, Polish the Dome

**Demonstrate**

- After soldering, cool the bead in cool water.
- Clean the metal in suggested cleaning acid or solution.
- Do a pre-polish on the bead, check for any extra metal and file it.
- Buff the bead and send for final polish.

**Practical**

- Ask students to clean the balls and beads in suggested cleaning acid or solution.
- Ask students to do a pre-polish and check for any extra metal.
- If there is any area with extra metal or solder on it, ask students to file it.
- Ask students to buff the balls and beads before sending it to final polish.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File, clean, buff, polish the dome</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Metal beads, metal domes, buff machine, polishing cloth, cleaning acid or solution, tweezers, gloves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Do**

- Check the pieces that the students have made for any defects.
- Show student's defects such as gaps in between 2 half spheres.
- Check for cracks or tearing of metal.
UNIT 3.3: Bead Making Machines

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Understand the working mechanism of bead making machines
2. Operate the bead making machines
3. Detect any faulty mechanism while checking the beads

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Bead making machines
- Blank sheets of paper
3.3.1: Hollow Bead and Ball Making Machines

Say

- Hollow bead and ball making machines are available in the market, but are quite expensive.
- These machines follow the same process as handmade beads such as melting of metal, making metal sheet.
- The only difference here is that the metal wire is hollow from inside and not solid as the metal sheet is curved to make a hollow tube.
- The hollow tube is then shaped, buffed and separated into metal beads and balls.
- Since the metal is already hollow from inside, the bead hole is not required to be drilled again.
- Every machine has a different capacity; hence it is advisable to check with your company about the machine if being used at your factory.
- Using the right alloys during the metal refining process will allow the metal to remain stable without cracks.
- The metal melting process is done by a person and not by the machine.

Field Visit

- Organize a field visit or a factory visit to show how a bead and ball making machine operates.
4. Stamp Patterns on Gold or Its Alloy

Unit 4.1 – Stamp the Gold Sheet
Unit 4.2 – File the Stamped Piece
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Prepare the metal sheet for stamping
2. Identify the different processes for stamping
3. Perform the manual stamping process
4. Perform the die strike stamping process
5. Identify defects in the stamped products
6. Create various kinds of stamps
7. Stamp the company logo correctly on the metal
8. Create metal sheets of different shapes and sizes using the metal shape cutters
UNIT 4.1: Stamp the Gold Sheet

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Stamp the metal sheet using the appropriate tools and equipment
2. Cut various metal shapes using the metal shape cutter tool
3. Stamp metal manually
4. Stamp metal shapes using the die striking machine
5. Use die stamps with the die striking machine

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Metal sheets, manual stamping tool kit, die stamps, silver coins, gold coins, any deity's silver idol (hollow from inside), metal shape cutters, saw frame with blades
- Blank sheets of paper
4.1.1: Introduction to Metal Stamping

**Ask**
- Students to refer to 3.1.1 for the metal sheet process from their participant handbook.

**Explain**
- Metal stamping can mean either of the following:
  - Stamping company logo
  - Name of company or person
  - Hallmark
  - Metal purity
- Messages such as "Happy Birthday" can be stamped on the metal.
- How a die is used to create durable metal pieces for example coin die stamp.
- A stamping tool set is required with stamps having the logo and an alphabet stamp kit and this is usually done manually.
- A die struck machine or tool is required with die stamps.
- Metal shape cutters and how to use them to get different shapes.

**Activity**
- Show die stamps used for making components.
- Ask students to list the different hallmarks that can be used for gold purity.
- Ask students to cut some shapes using the metal shape cutters.
- Ask students to cut metal strips using a saw blade.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identifying stamping tools</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Die stamps, manual stamping tool kit, metal shape cutters, metal sheets, saw frame with blade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1.2: Manual Metal Stamping with Tool Kit

**Explain**

- Once the required shape and size of the metal is cut, the stamping of the metal is done.
- The tool kit will contain Metal Letter or Design Stamps, Hammer (for best results use 1 or 2lb. Brass Hammer), Steel Bench Block, Metal Blanks for Stamping, Stamp Enamel™ (depending on kit manufacturer), Polishing Cloth (or a paper towel or clean rag) and a Straight Tape.

**Steps – Manual Metal Stamping**

**STEP 1:** Stick metal sheet with tape on steel bench block and mark tape

**STEP 2:** Place stamp on metal and move towards the tape without scratching the metal

**STEP 3:** Hold stamp perpendicular to metal and hammer lightly

**STEP 4:** Remove tape, wipe area clean, apply enamel or permanent colouring to the etched stamp
**Practical**

- Ask students to stamp 2 metal strips with any words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Manual stamping</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>Metal sheet, saw frame with blade, shape cutter, stamping tool kit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.1.3: Stamping Machines – Die Striking

**Explain**

- In die cutting, the punch and matrix are flat, each component has a particular shape, one with the desired outline and the opposite one with the exact same hollow shape in the inside used to achieve the specific outline.
- In die moulding, the punch and the matrix have the same surface; the punch in high relief and the matrix in low relief to achieve a desired texture in the precious metal sheet.

**Example**

- Show silver and gold coins as example for coin die stamp.
- Show silver idols of deity’s as example for die strike manufacturing.

**Field Visit**

- Show die strike manufacturing process at a factory.

**Notes**

- Students to make notes on the areas where they need to be careful while doing manual stamping.
- Always check the thickness of the metal when stamping, otherwise the stamping could break the metal.
- In die struck jewellery, the incorrect proportion of alloy to metal during metalling will make the metal brittle.
- When annealing the metal sheet for stamping make sure the sheet has been annealed properly and regularly to avoid any issues during stamping.
UNIT 4.2: File the Stamped Piece

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. File the stamped metal piece as per design requirements
2. Create different textures on the metal
3. Create different finishes on the metal
4. File out extra metal
5. File out extra solder
6. Shape the metal as per design requirements
7. Detect defects
8. Report metal defects to supervisor

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Stamped metal sheets, file set, bench pin, work bench, texture hammer set
- Blank sheets of paper
4.2.1: Filing

Ask

- Purpose of filing.

Explain

- When filing metals, always file in one direction, do not move it back and forth.
- The purpose of filing is to:
  - Remove scratches on the metal surface
  - Shape the metal into different forms with the help of files
  - Remove extra metal and extra solder
  - Create different finishes or textures

Practical

- Ask students to file minimum 2 stamped metal pieces.
- Ask students to create different textures and finishes on the metal using texture hammer set.
- Ask students to create one new shape through filing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Filing stamped metal piece</td>
<td>5 hours</td>
<td>Stamped metal sheets, saw frame with blade, texture hammer set, file set, bench pin, work bench</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Make Chain from Gold Bar

Unit 5.1 – Make Chain from Gold or Alloy
Unit 5.2 – File the Chain Components
Unit 5.3 – Detecting Product Defects
Unit 5.4 – Reading the Job Sheet
Unit 5.5 – Controlling Gold Loss
Unit 5.6 – Achieving Quality Standards
Unit 5.7 – Maintaining Quality of Production
Unit 5.8 – Know Your Organization and Its Standards
Unit 5.9 – Work Hazards
At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Operate chain making machines
2. Identify the various types of machine made chains
3. Identify the different processes required for start of chain making
4. Identify the different processes required post chain making
5. Create handmade chains
6. Create proper metal alloys
7. File chains as per design requirements
8. Identify types of chains
9. Compare the cost of handmade and machine made chains
10. Choose the right type of clasp for joining the chain together
11. Identify defects in chains
12. Identify defects in metal alloy used for chain making
13. Repair defects
14. Read a job sheet
15. Control gold loss
16. Understand importance of standard quality of production
17. Implement and maintain standard quality of production required by the company
18. Know more about their organization
UNIT 5.1: Make Chain from Gold or Alloy

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Differentiate between handmade and machine made chains
2. Identify the pre and post-processes of machine made chain
3. Implement the chain lengths as per design requirements
4. Identify the correct terms for different chain designs
5. Compare the cost of handmade and machine made chains
6. Choose the right type of clasp for joining the chain together
7. Create handmade chains

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Chain making machines, plier set, file set, metal wires, metal sheets, bending blocks or swage, metal nuggets, metal alloys, different types of clasps, steel scale (maximum length of 20 inches), bench pin, work bench, flame torch, solder alloys, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, different types of chain designs, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board
- Blank sheets of paper
Gold, silver and platinum chains can be made either by chain making machines or then manually. The metal needs to be melted with the right alloy and drawn into wires of the required thickness. If the annealing and cooling of the wire is not done correctly, the chain will break. The type of solder used for joining the links is also important. Chains are available in different designs. Chains are also measured as per required lengths. When making a chain, refer to your job sheet for the design requirement and length of the chain. Chains are not only used for neck pieces but also can be used for bracelets as well as anklets. Machine made chains are less expensive compared to handmade chains.
5.1.2: Chain Designs

Do

- Show the students the different types of chain designs.
- Keep 15 common chain designs on the trainer’s desk.

Activity

- Ask students to identify the 15 chain designs kept on trainer’s desk.
- Trainer to discuss the answers with entire class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Identifying chain designs</td>
<td>1.5 hours</td>
<td>15 chain designs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.3: Clasps

**Explain**

- Clasps are often available in lots manufactured by machines.
- A clasp can be made manually such as a hook clasp.
- The clasp is an important element of the chain as it creates the locking system for the chain.
- If a clasp is defective, the chain will fall from the customer’s neck.
- Clasps must be soldered manually on both machine-made chains as well as handmade chains.

**Practical**

- Ask students to cut 3 different chain lengths of different designs.
- Ask students to join or solder the 3 chains with 3 different types of clasps using the appropriate tools.
- Ask students to make one hook clasp with metal wire without soldering it and only by bending it.
- Ask students to file, clean and buff the entire chain after attaching the clasp.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clasp joining</td>
<td>3 hours</td>
<td>3 chains of different designs per student, 3 different types of clasps required as per chain design, solder alloy or wire, flame torch, plier set, file set, metal wires, steel scale (maximum length of 20 inches), bench pin, work bench, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.1.4: Machine Made Chains

**Explain**

- Metal wire should be made as per the wire drawing process using the correct alloy before using it in the chain making machine.
- Chain making machines can make chains of higher karatage.
- They involve the entire process from making the required thickness to the type of chain design.
- Many machines also have in-built soldering, cleaning and finishing processes.
- Plating is done after the chain has been completely buffed and polished.
- Machine made chains have high production quantities and are also cost effective.

**Field Visit**

- Visit a chain making factory and explain entire process to students.
### 5.1.5: Handmade Chains

**Explain**

- In handmade chains, the metal wire is drawn as per thickness specifications required for the design.
- The tools required for this job includes coiling set, pliers, wire cutter, solder alloy, flame torch or heat torch, solder pad, files, cleaning acid, water bowl, dry cloth, hammer, cup burs, cleaning tools, finishing tools and extra wire.
- This is a longer process since every part of the chain has to be made separately.
- Handmade chains are usually more expensive compared to machine made chains.
- In large factories, handmade chain steps are divided amongst the department such as soldering, making coil, making jump ring, twisting the jump ring, assembling and finishing.

**Practical**

- Ask students to make a simple curb chain and a clasp by following the steps mentioned in the participant handbook.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Handmade chain</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>Metal wire, coiling set, pliers, wire cutter, solder alloy, flame torch or heat torch, solder pad or block, files, cleaning acid, water bowl, dry cloth, hammer, cup burs, cleaning tools, finishing tools and extra wire.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 5.2: File the Chain Components

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Create different textures and finishes on handmade chains
2. Create different textures and finishes on machine made chains
3. Identify defects during filing
4. Repair defects
5. Pre-polish, clean and buff the chain

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Handmade chains, machine made chains, plier set, file set, metal wires, steel scale (maximum length of 20 inches), bench pin, work bench, flame torch, solder alloys, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board
- Blank sheets of paper
5.2.1: File the Chain

**Explain**

- Filing process for any metal is the same as earlier discussed.
- Filing is an important aspect in chains as many chains may require additional filing to give it a specific finish or texture.
- Filing the clasp is also important if it has been handmade.

**Practical**

- Ask students to file the simple curb chain and a clasp made in the earlier session.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>File the chain</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>Jump rings, pliers, wire cutter, solder alloy, flame torch or heat torch, solder pad or block, files, cleaning acid, water bowl, dry cloth, hammer, cup burs, cleaning tools, finishing tools and extra wire.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 5.3: Detecting Product Defects

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Identify defects in metal sheets
2. Identify defects in metal wire
3. Identify defects in components
4. Identify the reasons for defect
5. Repair defects
6. Report defects that are not repairable to supervisor

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Metal rods, metal wires, metal sheets, metal balls, metal half spheres, metal beads, handmade chains, machine made chains, plier set, file set, metal wires, steel scale (maximum length of 20 inches), bench pin, work bench, flame torch, solder alloys, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board
- Blank sheets of paper
5.3.1: Product Defects

Explain

- Jewellery components such as ring shanks which are made with metal sheets using the roll mill can have defects such as corrosion and stress (breakage) on it due to wrong alloy being used and due to irregular annealing of metal during the sheet making process.
- Defects include:
  - Corrosion and stress on a metal band
  - Damaged component or finding
  - Crack on ring shank due to annealing problem during wire drawing process
  - Cracks on prong made in die struck machine due to annealing problem during metal sheet making
  - Fractured ring blank made in die struck machine due to annealing problem during metal sheet making
  - Metal chipped off during bead making process due to excess hammering
  - Uneven ring shank

Practical

- Ask students to check the defects in the products they have made from beginning of programme and to repair the defect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Defect repairing</td>
<td>6 hours</td>
<td>Metal rods, metal wires, metal sheets, metal balls, metal half spheres, metal beads, handmade chains, machine made chains, plier set, file set, metal wires, steel scale (maximum length of 20 inches), bench pin, work bench, flame torch, solder alloys, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 5.4: Reading the Job Sheet

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Read a job sheet accurately
2. Identify the important aspects of the design requirement
3. Fill and submit a job sheet

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank job sheets
- Sample job sheet with all requirements filled in
5.4.1: Job Sheet Received from Supervisor

**Explain**

- Content of job sheet and how to fill it appropriately.

**Exercise**

- Ask students to fill in the blank job sheets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fill Job Sheet</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Blank job sheets</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.4.2: Sample Job Sheet

**Explain**

- Each area of the sample job sheet and how job sheets may differ from company to company.

**Do**

- Ask students to compare their filled in job sheets with the sample job sheet.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Skill Practice</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Resources</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Job Sheet Check</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>Blank job sheets, Sample job sheet displayed on LCD screen or projector</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
UNIT 5.5: Controlling Gold Loss

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Control metal loss
2. Identify the areas where metal loss can take place
3. Use the appropriate tools and machines to recover metal loss

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank job sheets
- Work bench, dust collector, bench brush, water bucket, fine size sieve
5.5.1: Preventing Metal Loss

- Points to prevent metal loss during the component making processes are as follows:
  - Don’t do extra filing
  - Don’t use extra force during the time of filing or pre-polishing
  - Precious metal should match the allowed metal loss standards as per design requirement
  - Tally accounts to check for metal weight matching before and after component making
  - Conduct regular and controlled environment cleaning for collection of metal dust
  - Minimise metal loss below the prescribed limits of the company
  - Report any incidents of high precious metal loss to the supervisor
  - Suggest improvements in order to reduce precious metal loss
  - Wash hands at the specified wash basin as per the company’s policy
  - Collect metal scattered during the day (dust and fragments)
5.5.2: Methods to Recover Metal Loss

Explain

- Jeweller’s as well as workers are required to clean their hands of gold dust even when leaving their workplace for a break.
- Although employees brush gold dust off their hands, it still remains in their nails and hair.
- After all the work is done, wash your hands with detergent in hand-washing buckets, even when you take a break.
- Collect gold dust from this water once a week.
- Have a gold dust collector under the wash basin to collect gold dust when washing hands if working in a factory.
- Collect and process this gold dust once a week.
- Weigh the gold dust before processing.
UNIT 5.6: Achieving Quality Standards

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Differentiate between Quality Control, Quality Assurance and Quality Standards
2. Achieve the quality standards of their organization and aim higher

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
5.6.1: Achieving Quality Standards as Per Company

Ask

- Students what is their understanding of quality.
- Students to list down their thoughts on quality and how to improve it.

Elaborate

- The following quality control points to maintain the quality standard of the company the students represent:
  - Symmetry of design
  - Design / Engraving or carving
  - Setting / prongs
  - Checking for defects such as porosity in casted metal, extra metal, missing prongs, missing stones, finish
  - Check weight of individual jewellery components before handling over to next department

![Quality Control](image)

**Fig 5.6.1.1: Achieve and Maintain Quality Standards as Per the Company**
UNIT 5.7: Maintaining Quality of Production

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Know their organization’s policy on quality of production
2. Maintain quality of production by detecting defects at an early stage

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
5.7.1: Maintaining Quality of Production

Ask

- Students to list down areas in their work where they need to maintain quality of production.

![Diagram of Quality of Production areas]

Fig 5.7.1.1: Maintaining Quality of Production

Team Activity

- Make teams of 4.
- Ask each team to give a minimum of 2 points on how to maintain quality of production.
- Discuss the points with the entire class.
UNIT 5.8: Know Your Organization and Its Standards

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Understand their organization’s goals and mission
2. Know their skills, company products and company quality standards

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
5.8.1: Know Your Organization and Its Standards

Ask

- Students to list the main quality standards of their organization.
- Students to list their main work skills and how can they use their skills to improve the quality standards of their organization.
- Students to list the type of products their organization manufactures.

Team Activity

- Make teams of 4.
- Ask each team to give a minimum of 2 points on their organization, skills and products.
- Discuss the points with the entire class.
UNIT 5.9: Work Hazards

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

1. Identify the hazards in their work area
2. Provide potential solutions to the hazard

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
5.9.1: Work Hazards

**Ask**

- Students to list the different types of hazards they notice in their work area.

**REDUCE THE HAZARD**
Repair damaged tools & equipment's

**SUBSTITUTE THE HAZARD**
Replace chemicals which are harmful with less harmful chemicals

**SEPARATE THE HAZARD**
Have separate ventilation for areas where chemicals and heat is used

**USE ADMINISTRATIVE CONTROL**
Ensure equipment's and machine's are serviced and well maintained

**USE PROTECTIVE CLOTHING**
Wear gloves, eye glasses etc. wherever required

*Fig 5.9.1.1: Work Hazards*

**Team Activity**

- Make teams of 4.
- Ask each team to give a minimum of 2 areas of work hazard.
- Discuss the points with the entire class.
6. Maintain IPR and Respect Copyright

Unit 6.1 - Scope of IPR
Unit 6.2 - Types of IPR
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Respect and maintain IPR.
2. Understand the importance of a company’s policies on IPR and plagiarism.
3. Understand and identify patents and IPR laws.
4. Observe IPR violation and order leaks.
5. Prevent leak of new designs to competitors.
6. Be aware of the company’s product and copyright.
7. Report to their supervisor if they find the same product in the market is used by other organisations.
8. Be aware of copyright clauses.
UNIT 6.1: Scope of IPR

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
• Protect the company’s IPR
• Explain the importance of IPR to colleagues
• Discuss the role IPR plays in a company
• Identify areas which are confidential

Resources to be Used
• Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
• LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
• Blank sheets of paper
6.1.1: Scope of IPR

Elaborate

- Scope of IPR includes but is not limited to:
  - Understand to spot sign of violations and alert authorities in time
  - To spot plagiarism and report
  - Be aware of patents and IPR
  - Understand to learn from past mistakes and report IPR violations on time
  - Understand how to communicate IPR violations
  - Not to involve in IPR violations
  - To understand company’s policies on IPR and plagiarism
  - To understand reporting structure
  - Understand importance of IPR in competitive market
UNIT 6.2: Types of IPR

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:

- Identify areas which are confidential
- Identify types of IPR

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
6.2.1: Intellectual property (IPR)

**Elaborate**

- Intellectual Property or IPR is very important for an organization.
- One should restrict or avoid giving such information to outsiders including customers of the company unless decided by the management otherwise.
- IPR includes but is not limited to:
  - Patents
  - Trade Marks
  - Industrial Designs
  - Plant Varieties (Factory Types)
  - Copyrights
  - Geographical Indications
  - Layout Design of an Integrated Circuit
  - Confidential Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Intellectual Property</th>
<th>Rights Covered</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copyright</td>
<td>Use or performance of original works of any type including any form of expression and literature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent</td>
<td>The use, manufacture or the sale of company inventions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trademark</td>
<td>The use of symbols, words, names, picture, designs, logo or combination of all the above used by companies to identify particular products, brands or services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trade Secrets</td>
<td>The privacy of data, documents, formulas or anything that is mentioned or maintained as confidential information</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tips**

- Outsiders can include customers, family members, friends and competitors.
- If you leave the company, then too you are required to follow the confidential agreement of not sharing information about the company with your new employer.
- In case, student finds someone leaking confidential information, they should inform their supervisor or a higher authority in the company.
7. Coordinate with Others

Unit 7.1 – Importance of Interaction and Coordination
Unit 7.2 – Interacting with Supervisor
Unit 7.3 – Interacting with Colleagues and Other Departments
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Identify the importance of co-ordination with others.
2. Understand that co-ordination is an essential part of their job.
3. Identify the key requirements for co-ordination amongst co-workers.
4. Identify the key requirements for co-ordination between them and their supervisor.
UNIT 7.1: Importance of Interaction and Coordination

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Know the importance of interaction and coordination
2. Identify gap areas in their interaction and coordination with co-workers, supervisor and others
3. Identify key elements required for coordination and interaction
4. Implement the learnings in their job role

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
### 7.1.1: Answer These Questions (Exercise)

**Exercise**
- Ask students to fill in the questionnaire given in their participant handbook
- Elaborate on the opinions mentioned and the highlighted words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sr. No</th>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Tick the Answer as per your Opinion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1      | How *Often* do people in your team or department speak with you about the job work or process? | o Never  
|        |                                                                           | o Sometimes  
|        |                                                                           | o Always |
| 2      | How *Much Time* do people in your team or department take to solve an issue or get new information to you about the job work or process? | o Never on time  
|        |                                                                           | o Sometimes on time  
|        |                                                                           | o Always on time |
| 3      | How *Precise* is their communication with you about the issue or the new information given to you? | o Never Precise  
|        |                                                                           | o Sometimes Precise  
|        |                                                                           | o Always Precise |
| 4      | When there is a *Problem* do people in your department or team blame each other or do they try and solve the problem/ issue together? | o Never  
|        |                                                                           | o Sometimes  
|        |                                                                           | o Always |
| 5      | How many of the people in your team or department *Share the Same Goals* as you regarding the progress of the company? | o None  
|        |                                                                           | o Some  
|        |                                                                           | o All |
| 6      | How many of the people in your team or department know what your *Job Work Actually* is? | o None  
|        |                                                                           | o Some  
|        |                                                                           | o All |
| 7      | How much do these people *Respect* you for the work you are doing?        | o Never  
|        |                                                                           | o Sometimes  
|        |                                                                           | o Always |
7.1.2: Solving the Gap Areas

**Explain**

- Students who have ticked “Never”, “None”, “Sometimes” or “Some” in most of the questions previous exercise need to solve the gap areas.
- Elaborate on the following gap areas:
  - Provide honest opinions
  - Report problems early
  - Focus on defect prevention than detection
  - Give appropriate feedback
  - Respect for ourselves, others and their time
  - Be friendly and a team player
  - Be problem solving
  - Have determination
  - Have willingness to learn and volunteer
  - Be accountable and take responsibility for our mistakes
  - Deliver work on time
  - Work well under pressure
  - Meet deadlines
  - Be open to ideas and suggestions
  - Keep personal information personal
  - Restrict ourselves from giving out company information to others
  - Focus on quality and quantity of work
  - Create a clear-cut division between personal and work life, no involving the two
  - Communicate differences respectfully and in an appropriate manner
7.1.3: Importance of Interaction and Coordination

Elaborate

- Interaction and coordination establishes effective leadership thus giving the worker an opportunity to move up in his/her career.
- They both help in motivation and morale development which is essential for the growth of a person in their career.
- Helps in smooth working of the organization.
- Interaction and coordination help in promoting cooperation and peace in the organization.
- It acts as a basis for coordination and cooperation which aids in resolving team issues.
- It acts as a basis for making decisions based on the feedback and interaction with the employee.
- Increases managerial competence by creating a healthy work environment.

Tips

- It’s always important that one should be honest about their thoughts, suggestions, opinions when it is concerning the company.
- Advise not to involve personal opinions with professional opinions.
- Advise not to involve personal life with professional life.
UNIT 7.2: Interacting with Supervisor

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Know the importance of interaction with their supervisor
2. Identify gap areas in their interaction and coordination with their supervisor
3. Identify key elements required for coordination and interaction
4. Implement the learnings in their job role

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
7.2.1: Interaction with Supervisor

Elaborate

• Interaction with supervisor is about communicating with supervisor to achieve a smooth and hazard-free work flow.

• Interaction with supervisor includes but is not limited to:
  • Raw material and work instruction by report supervisor
  • Communication regarding improvements required in working process or defects received from previous process
  • Communication with supervisor on maintenance of tools and machinery if required
  • To resolve conflicts
  • Informing about potential hazards in work place
  • Reporting about operation details
  • To know company's policies on language of communication, reporting and escalation policies, quality delivery standards and personnel management

• Facial expressions and body language add non-verbal indicators if information received by worker is understood or not.

• If you do not understand a part of the work instruction, always ask your supervisor for more information.
7.2.2: Try the PDCA Method with your Supervisor’s Help

Elaborate

- On how the PDCA method can help with improvements in the process flow, reporting product defects, informing about repairs and maintenance of equipment and tools.

![PDCA Method Diagram]

**Fig 7.2.2.1: PDCA Method of Interaction**

Tips

- Tell students to respect their supervisor and learn to trust him/her.
- If there is any conflict of thoughts, discuss the same with the supervisor in a humble manner and do not spread bad rumours about your supervisor because of this conflict.
UNIT 7.3: Interacting with Colleagues and Other Departments

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Know the importance of interaction with colleagues and other departments
2. Identify gap areas in their interaction and coordination with colleagues and other departments
3. Identify key elements required for coordination and interaction
4. Implement the learnings in their job role

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
7.3.1: Interact with Colleagues Within and Outside the Department

Elaborate

- Interaction with colleagues and other departments is about working as a team with colleagues and sharing work and work load.
- It also means:
  - Sharing team and individual goals
  - Sharing proper communication regarding work flow and finding out solutions for problems occurring in working together
  - Communication with each other, receiving feedback from Quality checker to achieve best work in time
  - Team coordination
  - Proper work process by interacting with others and adopting best practices

Fig 7.3.1.1: Interaction with Colleagues and Other Departments
7.3.2: Non-Verbal Communication

**Elaborate**

- When interacting with colleagues and other department personnel's, one should also remember the non-verbal communication or body language they are portraying to others.
- Sometimes, a wrong body language sign might create conflicts or create opinions about you and others.
- Tell students to always remember, what they do not speak may show in their actions, so be careful about what body language sign they are communicating to others.

![Diagram of non-verbal communication](image)

**Tips**

- The wrong body language can create a different impression on one's colleagues and other departments.
- If there is something that one would like to share with their colleagues or other departments but cannot due to certain reasons, they should inform their supervisor to communicate the same.
8. Maintain Health and Safety at Workplace

Unit 8.1 - Understand Potential Sources of Accidents
Unit 8.2 - Understand Safety Signs and Appropriate Requirements to Be Safe
Unit 8.3 - Understand Ergonomics or Bad Posture of Body
Unit 8.4 - Fire Safety Rules
Unit 8.5 - Understand How to Deal with Emergency Situations
Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this module, students will be able to:

1. Understand safety procedures.
2. Identify potential work hazards.
3. Handle an emergency situation at work.
4. Conduct CPR in an emergency situation.
5. Identify type of fire.
6. Identify the right fire extinguisher for different types of fires.
7. Use a fire extinguisher.
8. Realize the importance of complying with company safety rules and regulations.
UNIT 8.1: Understand Potential Sources of Accidents

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Identify the potential sources of accidents at their workplace
2. Identify types of potential accidents
3. Prepare themselves to avoid the potential accident
4. Identify rectification measures for avoiding the potential accidents

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
8.1.1: Understand Potential Sources of Accidents

Elaborate

- Accidents or hazards mean an incident involving loss of life inside or outside the workplace, suffering injuries internally and/or externally, or release of toxic chemical or explosion or fire, or spilling of hazardous chemical resulting in 'on-site' or 'off-site' emergencies or damage to equipment's leading to stoppage of process or adverse effects to the environment.
- Accidents or hazards usually occur due to:
  - Faulty equipment
  - Improper working conditions
  - Faulty inspection or repairing an equipment or tool without the proper instructions
  - Irregular maintenance of equipment and tools
  - Repairing of faulty equipment by someone who is not qualified to repair
  - Lack of concentration or bringing personal tensions to work
  - Unsafe practices such as plugging wires directly into sockets without a plug
  - Not reading voltage instructions for imported equipment
  - Improper or insufficient safety training
  - Smoking in non-smoking zones
  - Storage of chemicals near heat emitting machines
  - Improper storage of chemicals
  - Improper work clothing or lack of protective gears
  - Exposed wires or wires bitten by rats or other animals
  - Wires with bad insulation
  - Improper electric connections
  - Using wrong tools and equipment in wrong place or plugging into wrong socket
  - Using too many wires in one spike guard or electric socket
  - Bad housekeeping which includes wet floors, sweeping not done, papers thrown on floor, dustbins not covered or emptied
  - Tools and equipment not stored properly after day's work
  - Not unplugging tools and equipment after day's work or during breaks
  - Leaving main switch on of tools and equipment after day's work
  - Non-reporting of hazards to supervisor or ignoring potential dangers

Field Visit

- Take students on a tour of their company or work department.
- Ask them to identify potential sources of accidents such as live wires, faulty equipment, chemicals stored incorrectly etc.
Fig 8.1.1.1: Example of a Potential Accident Area

This man was safe ...
UNTIL NOW!

Fig 8.1.1.2: Example of a Potential Accident Area
UNIT 8.2: Understand Safety Signs and Appropriate Requirements to be Safe

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Identify safety signs at their work place
2. Act in time of emergency situations based on the safety signs and appropriate requirements
3. Identify safety gears that need to be used or worn while working and use it
4. Identify various types of safety signs
5. Refer to safety instructions to avoid any potential accidents
6. Understand importance of cleanliness of their work place

Resources to be Used
- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Various safety signs used in factories
- Blank sheets of paper
8.2.1: Understanding Safety Signs

Elaborate

- The meaning and importance of different safety signs.
- To reduce risk of electric shock, always unplug tools and equipment after use.
- Always unplug tool and equipment before changing parts or servicing.
- Do not service tools and equipment if not trained to do so.
- A clean place is a safe place.
- Wear safety gear always such as eye googles, gloves, apron, face masks, dust masks etc.
- Wash body part or eyes thoroughly with plenty of water if chemical spills on body or if chemical goes into the eyes.
- Use only known medicines, one should not act as a doctor unless trained in first aid.
- In an emergency situation, do not run, only walk to avoid hurting yourself and others.
- Use the stairs in an emergency and not the elevator.
- Know the routes to the emergency exits and flow the safety floor plan of your company.
- Do not rush back into an area which is dangerous for picking up your bag, leave it and exit as directed.
- Follow the evacuation steps provided by your company.

![Safety Signs Diagram](image)

Field Visit

- Take students on a tour of their company or work department.
- Ask them to identify safety signs and ask them to list the meaning of it.
8.2.2: Safety First

Elaborate

- It is important to wear safety gear while working with tools and equipment.
- Safety gear includes eye googles, gloves, apron, face mask, dust mask etc.
- Check the voltage instructions before using equipment and tools that are imported to avoid short circuit.
- Follow housekeeping rules such as keeping the work place and work bench clean, unplugging electrical equipment and tools before going on breaks and after finishing the day’s work.
- Use the right plug with the right pin for example if the equipment has been imported from the US, then the plug type will be different, do not use the Indian round plug point with this equipment, get a convertor.
- Circuits and spike guards should not be overloaded than its capacity.
- Check for wires that are running near areas where there is water or other chemicals that may cause a short circuit or potential fire.
- Check for wires that are twisted or the outer layer is torn making the inner wires visible.
- Wipe your hands dry before using any electric equipment or tool.
- Avoid wearing any metal jewellery as they can cause you to get a shock if there is a short circuit in an electric tool or equipment.
- Do not try to be a hero and try to contain the situation all by yourself.
- Work in teams to combat emergency situations.

Field Visit

- Take students on a tour of their company or work department.
- Ask them to identify the safety gears that are used in their company.
- Ask them to check their workplace and identify any areas that may be a threat to them in terms of safety.
UNIT 8.3: Understand Ergonomics or Bad Posture of Body

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Identify the right body postures that will not affect their health
2. Learn to relax their body and not put strain on it while working
3. Identify right body postures while working with certain tools and equipment
4. Understand the need for right body posture
5. Identify areas where they constantly have pain during work
6. Understand importance of ergonomics and its effects on their health

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- Blank sheets of paper
8.3.1: Understand Ergonomics or Bad Posture of Body

**Demonstrate**
- Method to hold soldering pen or heat pen correctly to avoid strain on the shoulders.
- Correct and incorrect working postures for example: back bent, neck in the front, computer not at eye level, chair not having a proper back rest, high desk and low chair etc.

**Say**
- If there is constant pain in one area of the neck or head, one should get themselves checked by an orthopaedic.
- The wrong body postures can create health problems such as stiff necks, pain in the entire body, stiff shoulders, cervical spondylosis and many other problems.
- Drink a lot of water to keep yourself hydrated.
- If one is using the washroom often and is drinking a lot of water, then he/she needs to check for any swelling of legs which could be the result of sitting in a wrong posture for a long time.

**Do**
- Show some easy stretching exercises to relax the muscles that can be done sitting on the chair.
UNIT 8.4: Fire Safety Rules

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Identify the different types of fire
2. Identify the causes of fire
3. Identify right type of fire extinguisher and use it on different types of fire
4. Read if the fire extinguisher is refilled or not
5. Understand basic firefighting concepts
6. Know what to do if they are trapped in a fire situation

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- All types of fire extinguishers
- Towels, water, fire blankets
- Blank sheets of paper
8.4.1: Fire Safety Rules

**Explain**

- The different types, classes and symbols for fire that can occur in a factory or company.
- The fire safety rules that applies in general and specific to the company the students represent.
- The fire extinguisher codes and what type of fire are they used for.
- The importance of installation date, date of refilling and next due date mentioned on a fire extinguisher.
- RACE – Rescue, Alarm, Contain, Extinguish; basic concepts of firefighting upon discovery of fire or smoke.
- Stairs should be used during a fire rather than the elevator as the stairs are a safer option.
- The other materials that can be used if one is trapped in a fire such as towels or cloth soaked in water and placed on the edge of the door, placing a soaked napkin or cloth over the nose and mouth, lie low to avoid the smoke, torch and use of fire blankets.
- Things that should be avoided during a fire such as switching on the lights, using water on an electrical fire, running, blocking an exit, carrying bags or purses, hiding below wooden benches or near electrical areas.

**Demonstrate**

- How to raise a fire alarm using a sample fire alarm.
- How to use a soaked towel on the edge of the door and on oneself.
- How to lie low in a fire situation to avoid breathing the fumes.

**Do**

- Ask students to go through their company's fire evacuation plan.
- Fire drill with the company codes for fire response.
8.4.2: Using the Fire Extinguisher

**Demonstrate**

- How to hold a fire extinguisher using the PASS method – Pull, Aim, Squeeze, Sweep

**Do**

- Ask students for the fire emergency numbers that they are aware of.

**Lab**

- Ask students to demonstrate how to use a fire extinguisher individually.
- Give a fire type and ask students to give the type of extinguisher that needs to be used.
UNIT 8.5: Understand How to Deal with Emergency Situations

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, students will be able to:
1. Identify the different types of emergency
2. Perform CPR
3. Use the first aid kit
4. Check the health of a person who has collapsed and follow the basic steps before medical help arrives
5. Contact the emergency numbers in India
6. Identify solutions to avoid similar emergencies in the future

Resources to be Used

- Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop
- First aid kit
- CPR kit
- Blank sheets of paper
8.5.1: Emergency Situations

**Explain**

- Different types of emergency situations that can occur such as:
- Fire or smoke: Is it fire or is it smoke, evaluate situation before taking next step.
- Evacuation: Earthquakes, building unstable are evacuation situations.
- Bomb threat: A bomb threat needs to be dealt by the police, do not try to be a hero, suspect any unknown objects that are not part of the daily work requirements.
- External emergency: Riots are the most common type of external emergency, always check with the local police station if it is safe to go outside, if it is not safe, stay within the company premises after keeping all the valuables in the safe.
- Internal emergency: Any fight between colleagues leading to a fist fight will come under internal emergency.
- Personal threat: Any person who is holding others as hostage with the aid of a weapon will be considered as a personal threat. Do no try to be a hero and disarm the assailant as this may result in injury or death to oneself or others.
- Medical emergency: If a person has collapsed or has had a heart attack, take necessary steps to ensure that medical help is on its way, don’t try to move the person as this may result in complications, do not try to play doctor unless you have been trained to do CPR or first aid. Do not try to give medicines as you may never know what allergic complications may take place.
8.5.2: Dealing with Emergency Situations

Steps – Basic First Aid

STEP 1: Evaluate situation

STEP 2: Call for help

STEP 3: Care for the person

STEP 4: Check response

Tips

- Always participate in emergency drills organized by your company, you may never know when the knowledge will come in use.
- Ask company for a live demonstration of first aid administration.
- Check with company the contents of the first aid box and where it is kept.
- Always report an incident to your supervisor or others, rather than hiding it.
Role Play

- Ask 4 students to volunteer for the role play of CPR.
- 2 students will act as the patient and 2 students will follow the basic first aid and the basic CPR steps.
8.5.3: Solving the Issue

- How to solve the emergency issues to avoid the same in the future.

**INCIDENT PRIORITIES**
1. Life Safety
2. Incident Stabilization
3. Proper Conservation

**Fig 8.5.3.1: Solving the Issue**
9. Employability & Entrepreneurship Skills

Unit 9.1 – Personal Strengths & Value Systems
Unit 9.2 – Digital Literacy: A Recap
Unit 9.3 – Money Matters
Unit 9.4 – Preparing for Employment & Self Employment
Unit 9.5 – Understanding Entrepreneurship
Unit 9.6 – Preparing to be an Entrepreneur
This Facilitator’s guide includes various activities which will help you as a facilitator to make the sessions participative and interactive.

**Ice breaker**

- You can begin the module with the following ice breaker:

**Five of Anything Ice Breaker Steps:**

- Divide the participants into groups of four or five by having them number off. (You do this because people generally begin a meeting by sitting with the people they already know best.)
- Tell the newly formed groups that their assignment is to share their five favourite movies of all time, their five favourite novels or their five least liked films. The topic can be five of anything - most liked or disliked.
- This ice breaker helps the group explore shared interests more broadly and sparks lots of discussion about why each person likes or dislikes their selected five.
- Tell the groups that one person must take notes and be ready to share the highlights of their group discussion with the class upon completion of the assignment.

**Expectation Mapping**

1. During the first session and after ice breaker session, ask the participants to answer the following question: “What do I expect to learn from this training?”
2. Have one of the participants write their contributions on a flip chart sheet.
3. Write down your own list of covered material in the training on another flip chart sheet.
4. Compare the two sheets, commenting on what will and what will not be covered during the training.
5. Set some ground rules for the training sessions. Ask the participants to put these rules on a flipchart and display it in the class.
6. You may get back to those sheets once again at the end of the last session of the training.
7. Benefits of doing this activity:
   - Participants feel better as their opinions are heard.
   - Participants get to know what they should expect from the training.
   - The facilitator gets to know which points to emphasize, which to leave out, and which to add during the training.
8. Expectations from the participants:
   - Must sign the attendance sheet when they arrive for class.
   - Conduct themselves in a positive manner
   - Be punctual, attentive, and participative
9. Explain the contents that are going to get covered one by one and connect it with the expectation mapping done earlier.
10. By the end of this exercise, the participants should have a clear understanding of what to expect from the session and what are the areas that will not get covered.

**Defining Objectives**

1. Defining the objectives in the beginning of the units sets the mood for the unit.
2. To begin with the end in mind sets the expectations of the participants as what could be the important takeaways from the session.
3. It is also a way of making participants take responsibility of their own learning process.
4. For the facilitator, the objectives decide a designed path to progress on so that the learning stays aligned and on track.
This Facilitator’s guide includes various activities which will help you as a facilitator to make the sessions participative and interactive.

**Ice Breaker**

- You can begin the module with the following ice breaker:

**Five of Anything Ice Breaker Steps:**

- Divide the participants into groups of four or five by having them number off. (You do this because people generally begin a meeting by sitting with the people they already know best.)
- Tell the newly formed groups that their assignment is to share their five favourite movies of all time, their five favourite novels or their five least liked films. The topic can be five of anything - most liked or disliked.
- This ice breaker helps the group explore shared interests more broadly and sparks lots of discussion about why each person likes or dislikes their selected five.
- Tell the groups that one person must take notes and be ready to share the highlights of their group discussion with the class upon completion of the assignment.

**Expectation Mapping**

1. During the first session and after ice breaker session, ask the participants to answer the following question: “What do I expect to learn from this training?”
2. Have one of the participants write their contributions on a flip chart sheet.
3. Write down your own list of covered material in the training on another flip chart sheet.
4. Compare the two sheets, commenting on what will and what will not be covered during the training.
5. Set some ground rules for the training sessions. Ask the participants to put these rules on a flipchart and display it in the class.
6. You may get back to those sheets once again at the end of the last session of the training.
7. Benefits of doing this activity:
   - Participants feel better as their opinions are heard.
   - Participants get to know what they should expect from the training.
   - The facilitator gets to know which points to emphasize, which to leave out, and which to add during the training.
8. Expectations from the participants:
   - Must sign the attendance sheet when they arrive for class.
   - Conduct themselves in a positive manner
   - Be punctual, attentive, and participative
9. Explain the contents that are going to get covered one by one and connect it with the expectation mapping done earlier.
10. By the end of this exercise, the participants should have a clear understanding of what to expect from the session and what are the areas that will not get covered.

**Defining Objectives**

1. Defining the objectives in the beginning of the units sets the mood for the unit.
2. To begin with the end in mind sets the expectations of the participants as what could be the important takeaways from the session.
3. It is also a way of making participants take responsibility of their own learning process.
UNIT 9.1: Personal Strengths & Value Systems

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Explain the meaning of health
2. List common health issues
3. Discuss tips to prevent common health issues
4. Explain the meaning of hygiene
5. Discuss the purpose of Swacch Bharat Abhiyan
6. Explain the meaning of habit
7. Discuss ways to set up a safe work environment
8. Discuss critical safety habits to be followed by employees
9. Explain the importance of self-analysis
10. Discuss motivation with the help of Maslow’s Hierarchy of Needs
11. Discuss the meaning of achievement motivation
12. List the characteristics of entrepreneurs with achievement motivation
13. List the different factors that motivate you
14. Discuss the role of attitude in self-analysis
15. Discuss how to maintain a positive attitude
16. List your strengths and weaknesses
17. Discuss the qualities of honest people
18. Describe the importance of honesty in entrepreneurs
19. Discuss the elements of a strong work ethic
20. Discuss how to foster a good work ethic
21. List the characteristics of highly creative people
22. List the characteristics of highly innovative people
23. Discuss the benefits of time management
24. List the traits of effective time managers
25. Describe effective time management technique
26. Discuss the importance of anger management
27. Describe anger management strategies
28. Discuss tips for anger management
29. Discuss the causes of stress
30. Discuss the symptoms of stress
31. Discuss tips for stress management
9.1.1: Health, Habits, Hygiene: What is Health?

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Explain the meaning of health
• List common health issues
• Discuss tips to prevent common health issues
• Explain the meaning of hygiene
• Discuss the purpose of Swachh Bharat Abhiyan
• Explain the meaning of habit

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook

Ask
• What do you understand by the term “Health?”
• According to you, who is a healthy person?

Say
• Discuss the meaning of health and a healthy person as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
• When did you visit the doctor last? Was it for you or for a family member?

Say
• Discuss the common health issues like common cold, allergies etc. Refer to the Participant Handbook.
• Let us do a small activity. I will need some volunteers.

Role Play
• Conduct a small skit with volunteers from the class. Consider one of the villagers has been appointed as a health representative of the village, what measures will you as a health representative suggest to the common villagers to prevent common health issues discussed.
• You will need at least 4 volunteers (Narrator, Health Representative, Head of the Village, Doctor).
• Explain the health concerns of the village to the Narrator. The Narrator will brief the class about the skit.
• Give the group of volunteers, 5 minutes to do discuss.
• At the end of 5 minutes, ask the group to present the skit to the class assuming them as the villagers.
• The class can ask questions to the group as a common villager.

Summarize
• Through this activity we got some tips on how can we prevent these common health issues.
Facade Guide

Say

- Let us now see how many of these health standards we follow in our daily life.

Activity

- Health Standard Checklist from the Participant Handbook.

Ask

- How many of you think that you are healthy? How many of you follow healthy habits?

Say

- Let's do an exercise to find out how healthy you are.
- Open your Participant Handbook section ‘Health, Habits, Hygiene: What is Health?’ and read through the health standards given.
- Tick the points which you think are true for you.
- Try to be as honest as possible as this test is for your own learning.

Do

- Ensure that all the participants have opened the right page in the Participant Handbook.
- Read aloud the points for the participants and explain if required.
- Give them 5 minutes to do the exercise.
- At the end of 5 minutes, ask the participants to check how many ticks have they got.

Summarize

- Tell them that they need to follow all the tips given in this checklist regularly in order to remain healthy and fit.

Ask

Discuss:

- Is it necessary to practice personal hygiene every day? Why?
- How does a person feel when they do not practice good personal hygiene? Why?
- Can good personal hygiene help a person feel good about his/her self? How?

Say

- Discuss the meaning of hygiene as given in the Participant Handbook.

Activity

- Health Standard Checklist: Hygiene
Say
- Let's do an exercise to find out if we maintain good hygiene habits or not.
- Open the Participant Handbook and read through the Health Standard checklist given.
- Tick the points which you think are true for you.
- Try to be as honest as possible as this test is for your own learning.

Do
- Ensure that all the participants have opened the right page in the Participant Handbook.
- Read aloud the points for the participants and explain if required.
- Give them 5 minutes to do the exercise.
- At the end of 5 minutes, ask the participants to check how many ticks have they got.
- Ask them to calculate their score.
- Tell them what each score indicates by reading aloud what has been mentioned in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
- How many of you have heard about “Swachh Bharat Abhiyan”?
- Can you tell the class what it is about?

Summarize
- Tell them about Swachh Bharat Abhiyan as given in the Participant Handbook and request them to take a pledge to keep our country clean.

Ask
- What is a habit?

Say
- Discuss some good habits which can become a way of life.

Summarize
- Tell them about good and bad habits and the reasons to make good habits a way of life.
9.1.2: Safety

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

• Discuss ways to set up a safe work environment
• Discuss critical safety habits to be followed by employees

Resources to be Used

• Participant Handbook
• Safety signs and symbols
• Safety equipments
• Blank papers
• Pens

Say

• There are many common safety hazards present in most workplaces at one time or another. They include unsafe conditions that can cause injury, illness and death.
• Safety Hazards include:
  • Spills on floors or tripping hazards, such as blocked aisles or cords running across the floor.
  • Working from heights, including ladders, scaffolds, roofs, or any raised work area.
  • Unguarded machinery and moving machinery parts; guards removed or moving parts that a worker can accidentally touch.
  • Electrical hazards like cords, missing ground pins, improper wiring.
  • Machinery-related hazards (lockout/tag out, boiler safety, forklifts, etc.)

Team Activity

Safety Hazards

• There are two parts to this activity.
• First part will cover the potential safety hazards at work place.
• Second part will cover a few safety signs, symbols and equipments at work place.
• Use this format for the first part of the activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PART 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hazard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ask

• How could you or your employees get hurt at work?
Let’s understand it better with the help of an activity. You will be given a handout within your groups. You have to think about the possible hazards of your workplace, what damage these hazards could cause and about the corrective action.

Divide the class into five to six groups of four participants each. Put the format on the board for the activity. Give blank papers and pens to each group. The group is expected to think and discuss the potential safety hazards in the workplace. Ask the group to discuss and fill the format using the blank sheet. Give the groups 5 minutes for the activity. For the second part of the activity, show the class some pictures of safety signs, symbols and equipments. Now they will put down a few safety symbols, signs or equipment against the safety hazards identified. Give them 5 to 10 minutes to discuss and draw/note it. At the end of 10 minutes the groups will present their answers to the class.

Now, let’s discuss the answers with the class. All the groups will briefly present their answers.

Ask the audience to applaud for the group presentation. Ask de-brief questions to cull out the information from each group. Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up the discussion quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

What did you learn from the exercise? As an entrepreneur, is it important to ensure the safety of your employees from possible hazards? Why?

Ask the participants what they have learnt so far. Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far. Close the discussion by summarizing the tips to design a safe workplace and non-negotiable employee safety habits.
9.1.3: Self Analysis- Attitude, Achievement Motivation: What is Self Analysis?

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Explain the importance of self-analysis
- Discuss motivation with the help of Maslow’s Hierarchy of Needs
- Discuss the meaning of achievement motivation
- List the characteristics of entrepreneurs with achievement motivation
- List the different factors that motivate you
- Discuss the role of attitude in self-analysis
- Discuss how to maintain a positive attitude
- List your strengths and weaknesses

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Old newspapers
- Blank papers
- Pencils/ pens

Activity

- This is a paper pencil activity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What are the three sentences that describe you the best?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you need to live happily?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What are your strengths and weaknesses?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Do

- Write the three questions on the board/ flipchart before the session begins.
- Give plain papers and pencils/ pens to each participant.
- Tell participants to write the answer for the three questions on the paper.
- Tell them the purpose of this activity is not to judge anyone but to understand more about self.

Say

- Discuss the concept of Self Analysis and motivation with reference to Maslow’s Hierarchy of Needs as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

Team Activity

Tower building
- Each group which will create tower using the old newspapers.
Do

- Divide the class into groups.
- Give them some old newspapers.
- The task is to create a tower out of the newspapers.
- The group which will create the highest tower standing on its own will be considered the winning group.
- Groups can use as many newspapers as they want to and in any way they want.

Ask

- What did the winning group do differently?
- If you were given a chance, how would you have made the tower differently?
- How did you feel while making the tower?
- Did you feel motivated?

Say

- Discuss the concept of achievement motivation and characteristics of entrepreneurs with achievement motivation as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

Ask

- Is your attitude positive or negative?

Say

- Let me tell you a story:

It’s Little Things that Make a Big Difference.

There was a man taking a morning walk at the beach. He saw that along with the morning tide came hundreds of starfish and when the tide receded, they were left behind and with the morning sun rays, they would die. The tide was fresh and the starfish were alive. The man took a few steps, picked one and threw it into the water. He did that repeatedly. Right behind him there was another person who couldn’t understand what this man was doing. He caught up with him and asked, “What are you doing? There are hundreds of starfish. How many can you help? What difference does it make?” This man did not reply, took two more steps, picked up another one, threw it into the water, and said, “It makes a difference to this one.” What difference are we making? Big or small, it does not matter. If everyone made a small difference, we’d end up with a big difference, wouldn’t we?

Ask

- What did you learn from this story?

Activity

What Motivates You?

- This is an individual activity.
- It is an exercise given in the Participant Handbook.

Do

- Ask the class to open their Participant Handbook and complete the exercise given in the section What Motivates You?
- Ensure that the participants have opened the correct page for the activity.
- Give the class 5 minutes to complete the activity.
Facilitator Guide

Say

- Discuss the concept of attitude and how to cultivate a positive attitude as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

Summarize

- Close the discussion by summarizing how self-analysis, knowledge about what motivates you and your positive attitude can help in your business as well in life.
9.1.4: Honesty & Work Ethics

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Discuss the qualities of honest people
- Describe the importance of honesty in entrepreneurs
- Discuss the elements of a strong work ethic
- Discuss how to foster a good work ethic

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook

Ask

- What do you understand by honesty?
- Why is it important for entrepreneurs to be honest?
- Do you remember any incident where your honesty helped you in gaining confidence?
- Do you remember any incident where someone lost business due to dishonesty?

Say

- Talk about honesty, qualities of an honest person, and the importance of honesty in entrepreneurs as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- “Let’s understand it better with the help of some case scenarios. You will be given some cases within your groups. You have to analyse the case scenario that has been given to you and then find an appropriate solution to the problem.
- Keep your discussion focussed around the following:
  - What went wrong?
  - Who was at fault?
  - Whom did it impact- the customer or the businessman?
  - How would it impact the business immediately? What would be the long term impact?
  - What could be done?
  - What did you learn from the exercise?

Do

- Divide the class into four groups of maximum six participants depending on the batch size.
- Give one case study to each group.
- Instruct them to read the case carefully.
- Put down the de-brief questions on the board and ask the groups to focus their discussion around these questions.
- The group is expected to analyse and discuss the case amongst them and find a solution to the given problem. Give the class 5-10 minutes to discuss the case and note down their solutions.
- At the end of 10 minutes the team should present their case solution to the class. The presentation can be a narration or a role play.
- Ask the group to select a group leader for their group. The group leader to discuss and assign roles to the group members for the presentation.
Facilitator Guide

Case Study Analysis

Scenario 1
Aakash has a small mobile retail sales and repair shop in Allahabad. He has one of the most popular outlets and has great rapport with his customers.

It’s around 11 AM when a customer barges in to the shop and starts shouting at Aakash for giving her a faulty instrument. The screen of her mobile is cracked from one side. Aakash remembered thoroughly checking the handset before handing it over to the customer. The customer threatens to sue him and to go to Consumer Court for cheating her. Now, the problem occurred somewhere outside the shop but as other customers were listening to the conversation, it might impact his business. The situation needs to be managed very sensitively. What would you do if you were in Aakash’s place?

Scenario 2
Rajni does beautiful Phulkari embroidery on suits and sarees. She has a small home-based business. She has a huge list of customers on Facebook and WhatsApp who give her orders regularly. Smita is one of her old and regular customers. As her sister-in-law’s wedding was around the corner, Smita wanted to buy few handcrafted Phulkari duppatta. She placed an order for three duppattas via WhatsApp and requested Rajni to send them as soon as possible. When the parcel reached Smita through courier she found that out of the three duppattas, only one was hand embroidered and the other two had machine embroidery on them. Even the length and the quality of the material was not as desired. Smita was heartbroken. It was a complete waste of money and moreover she couldn’t wear what she had planned to during the wedding functions. She sent a message to Rajni on WhatsApp, expressing her anger and disappointment.

Smita has also sent a feedback and expressed her disappointment on the social media... this will directly affect Rajni’s business. What would you do if you were in Rajni’s place?

Scenario 3
Shankar is a tattoo artist who has a small tattoo showroom in a big, reputed mall in New Delhi. Mr Saksham had an appointment for today, at 11:00 am but he reached at 11:50 am. Meanwhile, Shankar had to reschedule his next appointment. After availing Shankar’s services, Mr Saksham started yelling in an abusive language, refusing to pay the requisite amount, and finding faults in the services provided by him. Who was at fault in this case? What should Shankar do? Should he confront Saksham or give in to the demands of the client?

Scenario 4
Shailender is an online cloth reseller who does business through social networking sites such as Facebook and WhatsApp. Priyanka made online payment for a dress to Shailander. But she did not receive the dress for a month. When she asked for a cancellation, Shailander started misleading her. For almost 45 days, he kept promising her that he will pay the amount today, tomorrow, day after etc. Even after repeated calls and messages when she did not receive the payment or the dress, she decided to write a post against him on a popular social media platform. As a result, Shailender lost lots of customers and his flourishing business faced a major crisis. How could this situation have been managed?

Say

• Now, let’s discuss the problem and solution with the larger group.
• The group will first briefly describe the case to the class.
• Then discuss the issue identified and the proposed solution.
• Once the presentation is over, the class can ask their questions.
Do

- Congratulate each group for the group presentation.
- Ask the audience to applaud for them.
- Ask de-brief questions to cull out the information from each group.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up the discussion quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Summarize

- Ask the participants what they have learnt from the exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
- Close the discussion by summarizing the importance of honesty and work ethics for entrepreneurs.
9.1.5: Creativity and Innovation

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• List the characteristics of highly creative people
• List the characteristics of highly innovative people

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook
• Chart papers
• Marker pens

Ask
• You must be aware of the term 'Rags to riches' and heard stories related to the term.
• What do these stories tell us?
• What was so special about these people?

Say
• Let’s have a look at these stories.
• There are some inspiring stories about people which I would like to share with you.
• Narrate these stories to the class.

A.P.J. Abdul Kalam
Who has not heard of A.P.J. Abdul Kalam: Avul Pakir Jainulabdeen Abdul Kalam hailed from a very humble background. His father was a boat owner. To help his family, Kalam would work as a newspaper vendor. With limited resources, he graduated in Physics and studied aerospace engineering. He was instrumental in India’s step towards nuclear energy. In 2002, he became the 11th President of India.

Water filter/purifier at source
Two young boys studying in classes 4 and 5, from Lingzya Junior High School, Sikkim designed a simple innovative low cost water purifier.
Inspiration behind the idea: Most people today prefer to use a water filter/purifier at their home.
Both the children have given idea to have filter/purifier at the source of water so that everyone has access to clean water without having to make an investment in purchasing a filter/purifier.
Soring’s idea is to have a centralised purification system at the point of distribution like water tank while Subash’s idea is to have such purifiers attached to public taps.

Solar seeder
This is a story of an innovative solar seeder and developed by Subash Chandra Bose, a class 8, student from St Sebasthiyar Matriculation School, Pudukkottai, Tamil Nadu. Subash has developed a solar powered seed drill, which can undertake plantation for different size of seeds at variable depth and space between two seeds.
Looms for physically challenged
Now this is really inspiring of two sisters, Elakkiya a Class 6 student and Pavithra a Class 9 student of SRC Memorial Matriculation, Erode, Tamil Nadu.
The two sisters have come up with loom for lower limbed physically challenged. In their loom they have replaced the pedal operated system with a motor and a gearbox attached to a pulley mechanism.

Ask
- If they can, why can't you?
- Discuss concepts related to 'Creativity and Innovation' with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Say
- Recall the stories on motivation.
- What is the inner drive that motivates people to succeed?
- Let's learn more about such creative and innovative entrepreneurs with the help of an activity.

Team Activity
- This is a group activity.
  - Think of any one famous entrepreneur and write a few lines about him or her.

Activity De-brief
- Why did you choose this particular entrepreneur?
- What is his/her brand name?
- What creativity does he/she possess?
- What was innovative about their ideas?

Do
- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into small groups of 4 or 6 depending on the batch size.
- Give each group a chart paper.
- Tell the participants they have to write a few lines about any one famous entrepreneur.
- Give the participants 10 minutes to discuss and write.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.
- Ask each group to read out what they have written.
- Ask the de-brief questions.
Summarize

- Summarize the unit by asking participants if they know of some people who are highly creative and innovative in their approach.
- Ask them to share some experiences about these people with the class.

Notes for Facilitation

- Source for stories on innovations:
9.1.6: Time Management

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Discuss the benefits of time management
- List the traits of effective time managers
- Describe effective time management techniques

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook

Ask
Does this sound like you?
- I can never get enough time to finish what I am doing in a day.
- I have so many things to do that I get confused.
- I want to go for a walk and exercise, but I just do not have the time.
- I had so much to do, so I could not deliver that order on time.
- I would love to start my dream business; but, I just do not have the time.

Example
- Let's look at these two examples:

Example 1:
Ankita works from home as a freelance writer. She says she can easily put in 8 hours of dedicated work in a day. Because she works from home, she saves money on travel and has a comfortable work routine. But there is a challenge and it is distraction. As she works from home, she can easily just get up and sit down on the sofa to watch TV, wasting valuable time. She may have chores to do, errands to run and bills to pay. She ends up working only two to three hours a day and the result is, her work gets piled up. She is unable to take on more work due to this. Even though her quality of work is appreciated her clients are not very happy about the delay in submission.

Example 2:
Javed has started a successful online selling company from home and makes a good living from his sales. He has set up a small office space in his living room. As both his parents are working full-time, he also has the role of taking care of his two younger siblings. He almost spends half of his day with the younger kids. He does not mind it but it means taking time away from the work. He is still able to manage his online business with these commitments. He wants to spend some more dedicated hours so as to increase his profits. He also wants to look into new business avenues. What should he be doing.

Ask
- Does this happen with you too?
- Do you find it difficult to prioritize your work?
- Are you able to manage your time effectively?
Activity

- Conduct a group discussion based on the above examples.
- Direct the discussion on how to prioritize work and manage time effectively.

Say

- Time management is not only about how hard you work but also about how smart you work.
- Discuss “What is Time Management” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask

- Why is it important to manage time? How does it help?
- What happens when you don’t manage your time effectively?
- Do you find it difficult to prioritize your work?

Say

- Discuss the benefits of time management given in the Participant Handbook.
- Let’s learn effective time management with the help of an activity.

Activity

Effective Time Management

- This activity has two parts:

  **PART 1**
  **TO-DO LIST**

  - You have to make a to-do list.
  - List all of the activities/tasks that you have to do.
  - Try to include everything that takes up your time, however unimportant it may be.
  - If they are large tasks, break them into action steps, and write this down with the larger task.
  - You can make one list for all your tasks or have separate to-do lists for personal and professional tasks.

  **PART 2**
  **URGENT-IMPORTANT GRID**

  - You have to make a grid as shown on the board here.
  - This grid has four boxes. As you can see, each box has a different heading.
  - At the heart of the urgent-important grid, are these two questions:
    - Is this task important?
    - Is this task urgent?
  - Now, you have to think about each activity that you have written in your to-do list and put it into one of the four categories.
  - **What do these categories depict?**
    - **Category 1: Urgent/Important**
      - This category is for the highest priority tasks. They need to get done now.
PART 2
URGENT-IMPORTANT GRID

• You have to make a grid as shown on the board here.
• This grid has four boxes. As you can see, each box has a different heading.
• At the heart of the urgent-important grid, are these two questions:
  • Is this task important?
  • Is this task urgent?
• Now, you have to think about each activity that you have written in your to-do list and put it into one of the four categories.
• What do these categories depict?
  • Category 1: Urgent/Important
    • This category is for the highest priority tasks. They need to get done now.
  • Category 2: Not Urgent/Important
    • This is where you want to spend most of your time.
    • This category allows you to work on something important and have the time to do it properly.
    • This will help you produce high quality work in an efficient manner.
    • The tasks in this category are probably the most neglected ones, but also the most crucial ones for

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
URGENT-IMPORTANT GRID

**URGENT/ IMPORTANT**
- Meetings
- Last minute demands
- Project deadlines
- Crisis

**URGENT/ NOT IMPORTANT**
- Interruptions
- Phone calls/ E-mails
- Other people’s minor demands

**NOT URGENT/ IMPORTANT**
- Planning
- Working towards goals
- Building relationship
- Personal commitments

**NOT URGENT/ NOT IMPORTANT**
- Internet surfing
- Social media
- Watching TV

URGENT/ IMPORTANT GRID format

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**URGENT/ IMPORTANT**
- Meetings
- Last minute demands
- Project deadlines
- Crisis

**URGENT/ NOT IMPORTANT**
- Interruptions
- Phone calls/ E-mails
- Other people’s minor demands

**NOT URGENT/ IMPORTANT**
- Planning
- Working towards goals
- Building relationship
- Personal commitments

**NOT URGENT/ NOT IMPORTANT**
- Internet surfing
- Social media
- Watching TV
Do

- Put down the formats for the to-do list and the urgent/important grid on the board.
- Instruct the participants to prepare their to-do list first.
- Give the participants 10 minutes to prepare the list.
- Once done, instruct them to divide the tasks in to-do list into the four categories.
- Explain the four categories to the participants giving examples specific to their context.
- As you explain the categories fill the grid with the type of tasks.
- Give the participants 40 minutes to fill the grid.
- Then explain how to balance the tasks between the four categories.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Say

Activity De-brief:

How can we balance tasks between the four categories?

How to manage time through this grid?

- Category 1: Urgent/Important
  - Try to keep as few tasks as possible here, with the aim to eliminate.
  - If you spend too much of your time in this category, you are working solely as a trouble shooter, and never finding time to work on longer-term plans.

- Category 2: Not Urgent/Important
  - Plan these tasks carefully and efficiently as they are most crucial ones for success.
  - If necessary, also plan where you will do these tasks, so that you're free from interruptions.
  - Include strategic thinking, deciding on goals or general direction and planning in your planning process.

- Category 3: Urgent/Not Important
  - Ask yourself whether you can reschedule or delegate them.
  - A common source of such activities is other people. Sometimes it's appropriate to say "no" to people politely, or to encourage them to solve the problem themselves.

- Category 4: Not Important and Not Urgent
  - You also want to minimize the tasks that you have in this category.
  - These activities are just a distraction – avoid them if possible.
  - You can simply ignore or cancel many of them.
  - Politely say "no" to work assigned by others, if you can, and explain why you cannot do it.
  - Schedule your leisure activities carefully so that they don't have an impact on other important tasks.
  - Discuss the traits of effective time managers and effective time management techniques as given in the Participant Handbook.

Summarize

- Discuss the traits of effective time managers and effective time management techniques as given in the Participant Handbook.
Here is a short story. You can conclude the session narrating the story. To make it more interesting you can perform the demonstration described and discuss the short story.

One day an expert in time management was speaking to a group of students. As he stood in front of the group, he pulled out a large wide-mouthed glass jar and set it on the table in front of him. Then he took out a bag of about a dozen rocks and placed them, one at a time, into the jar. When the jar was filled to the top and no more rocks would fit inside, he asked, "Is this jar full?" Everyone in the class said, "Yes." Then he said, "Really?"

He reached under the table and pulled out a bucket of gravel (small stones). He dumped some gravel in and shook the jar causing pieces of gravel to work themselves down into the space between the rocks. Then he asked the group once more, "Is the jar full?" By this time, the class began to understand. "Probably not," one of them answered. "Good!" he replied.

He reached under the table and brought out a bucket of sand. He started dumping the sand in the jar and it went into all of the spaces left between the rocks and the gravel. Once more he asked the question, "Is this jar full?" No!" the class shouted. Once again he said, "Good." Then he grabbed a jug of water and began to pour it in until the jar was filled to the brim. Then he looked at the class and asked, "What is the point of this illustration? "One student raised his hand and said, "No matter how full your schedule is, if you try really hard you can always fit some more things in it!" "No," the speaker replied, "that’s not the point. The truth this illustration teaches us is: If you don’t put the big rocks in first, you’ll never get them in at all.” What are the 'big rocks' in your life? Your children; your loved ones; your education; your dreams; a worthy cause; teaching or mentoring others; doing things that you love; time for yourself; your health; your mate (or significant other). Remember to put these BIG ROCKS in first or you’ll never get them in at all. If you sweat about the little stuff (the gravel, sand, and water) then you’ll fill your life with little things you worry about that don’t really matter, and you’ll never have the time you need to spend on the big, important stuff (the big rocks).

End the story with these lines...

So, tonight, or in the morning tomorrow, when you are reflecting on this short story, ask yourself this question: What are the 'big rocks' in my life? Then, put those in your jar first.
9.1.7: Anger Management

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Discuss the importance of anger management
- Describe anger management strategies
- Discuss tips for anger management

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook

Ask
- What is anger? Is anger good or bad?
- Is anger normal or an abnormal behaviour? How can anger harm you?
- Why is it important for entrepreneurs to manage their anger?

Say
- Talk about anger and the importance of anger management in entrepreneurs as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- Let us do a small activity. This is an individual activity.
- Think of the incidents and situations that angered you and hurt you.

Do
- Instruct them to note down these situations under different categories (as given in the Activity).
- Give the class 3-5 minutes to think and note down their answers.
- At the end of 5 minutes, ask some participants to volunteer and present their answers.
- They can also share these situations with their fellow participants if they do not wish to share it with the entire class.

Activity
- Do you remember any incident which has hurt
  - you physically
  - you mentally
  - your career
  - your relationships.

Ask
- Do you ever get angry?
- What are the things that make you angry?
- Do you remember any incident where your anger management helped you in maintaining healthy relationship?
- Do you remember any incident where someone lost business/ friend/ relationship due to temper (anger)?
Facilitator Guide

Do

- Give the class the anger triggers (the cause) as listed in the activity.
- Put down the activity format (Anger Triggers, Result of your Anger, Anger Management Techniques) on the board and instruct the class to write the answers under different categories.
- Give the class 3-5 minutes to think and note down their answers.
- At the end of 5 minutes, ask the participants who wish to volunteer and present their answers.

Say

- There are a few strategies which can help in controlling your anger. Let's do an activity to understand the anger management process better.
- This is an individual activity.
- Think of the incidents/situations which trigger your anger (the cause).
- Then think what happened as a result of your anger (the effect).
- You need to come up with some techniques to manage your anger.

Activity

Trigger points and Anger Management Techniques Activity

**Anger Triggers**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>List of triggers that make you angry:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Someone says you did something wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You want something you can't have now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You get caught doing something you shouldn't have been doing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are accused of doing something you didn't do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are told that you can't do something.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone doesn't agree with you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone doesn't do what you tell him to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Someone unexpected happens that messes up your schedule.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Result of your anger:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Write the techniques that you use to manage your anger:

**Anger Management Techniques**

---

**Say**
- Now let's discuss the problems and solution with all.
- The individual will first briefly describe trigger points to the class.
- Then discuss the result of the anger. Other participants are requested to remain quiet while one is making the presentation.
- Post presentation, other participants may ask questions.

**Do**
- Congratulate each individual for sharing their points.
- Ask the audience to applaud for them.
- Ask de-brief questions after the presentation to the class.
- Keep a check on the time. Ask the participants to wind up the activity quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

**Ask**

**De-brief questions:**
- In the situation described by the presenter, who was at fault?
- How could you have handled this situation alternatively?

**Summarize**
- Close the discussion by summarizing the strategies and tips of anger management for entrepreneurs.
- Ask the participants what have they learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.

**Notes for Facilitation**
- Encourage the participants to share information about them while presenting the situations to the class.
- Keep the format of the Activity prepared in a chart paper so that it can be displayed during the session.
9.1.8: Stress Management: What is stress?

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the causes of stress
- Discuss the symptoms of stress
- Discuss tips for stress management

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook

Ask
- You are waiting in the reception for an interview or a very important meeting, suddenly your legs are shaky, your hands are cold, you are feeling nervous. Have you ever been in this kind of situation?
- Have you had days when you had trouble sleeping?
- Have you ever been so worried about something that you ended up with a terrible headache?

Say
- You’ve probably heard people say, I’m really stressed out” or ”This is making me totally stressed.”

Ask
- What do you understand by stress?
- What gives you stress?
- How do you feel when you are stressed or what are the symptoms of stress?
- How can stress harm you?
- Why is it important for entrepreneurs to manage stress?

Say
- When we feel overloaded or unsure of our ability to deal with certain challenges, we feel stressed.
- Discuss about stress, causes of stress, and symptoms of stress as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- Let’s understand the causes of stress and how to deal with them with the help of some case scenarios.
- You will be given some cases.
- You have to analyse the case scenario and then find an appropriate solution to the problem.
- This will be a group activity.

Do
- Divide the class into four groups of 5-6 participants (depending on the batch size).
- Assign one case scenario to each group.
- Instruct them to read the case carefully.
- The group is expected to analyse and discuss the case amongst them and find a solution to the given problem.
- Explain their discussion should result in getting answers for the following questions:
Scenario 1
Akash’s alarm doesn’t go off and he gets late getting out of the house. He hits traffic and ends up 15 minutes late to work, which his boss notices. He gets to his desk and finds he has to complete 2 reports in next one hour. Just when he is about to begin work, a message pops up “Telecon with the client begins in 10 minutes. Please be in the conference room in 5 minutes.”
His is not prepared for the call. He is stressed. He does not want to speak to his boss about this. He is stressed, feeling uncomfortable and sick. Not in a position to attend the call or finish the reports on time.

Scenario 2
While paying his overdue bills, Rahul realised that it's the middle of the month and he has only Rs 500 left in his account. He has already asked all of his friends, and family for loans, which he hasn't paid back yet. He is still contemplating over the issue when his phone rings. His sister's birthday is due next week and she has seen a beautiful dress which she wants to buy but cannot tell the parents as it is a bit expensive. She wishes if Rahul could buy the dress for her. Rahul has promised to buy her the dress for her birthday.
Rahul is stressed, does not understand what to do. He is unable to concentrate on his work and unable to complete the tasks assigned. His team leader has already warned him of the delay.

Scenario 3
Sheela calls the cable company as she has unknown charges on her bill. She has to go through the automated voice mail menu three times and still can't get through to a customer care executive. After 15 minutes of repeated efforts, her call is answered. She explains the entire issue to the customer care executive but before the person could suggest a way out, the call drops.
Now Sheela has to call back and repeat the whole process all over again with a new customer care executive. She is very angry and calls again but cannot connect this time.
She has to leave to office so she decides to call from office and check. When she connects this time she is angry and argues with the executive on the call. All her co-workers around are looking at her as her volume has suddenly increased. She bangs the phone and ends the call.
Her co-worker Neelam enquires what has happened to her. She ignores her and just walks off. She has become irritable and her behaviour and tone with other co-workers is not acceptable.
Scenario 4

Arpit is a young entrepreneur who started doing business through Facebook few weeks back. He had always been into a job. Although Arpit has very few financial liabilities, it wasn't an easy decision to leave a comfortable job at once and look for newer pastures. Arpit's boss warned him of the consequences and the challenges of starting a business when nobody ever in his family had been in business. He has not been able to get a good deal till now. This is an important life shift for him which comes with unknown variables. Arpit is nervous and is wondering if he has what it takes to fulfill the requirement of his new role, or the new experiences he's likely to face.

Ask

De-brief questions:
- What was/were the cause(s) of stress?
- Was the stress avoidable or manageable under the given circumstances?
- If yes, how do you think that the stress could be avoided (managed)?
- If no, then why not?

Say

- Now, let's discuss the problem and solution with the larger group.
- The group will first briefly describe the case to the class.
- Then discuss the issue identified and the proposed solution.
- Post presentation, the other groups may ask questions to the group that has presented.

Do

- Congratulate each group for sharing their points.
- Ask the audience to applaud for them.
- Ask de-brief questions to cull out the information from each group.
- Keep a check on time. Tell participants to wind up the discussion quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Say

- While it is common and normal to feel some tension. This feeling nervous and tensed can interfere with your thinking process and can have a negative impact on your performance.
- Stress can deplete the most vibrant of souls. It can have a negative effect on every aspect of a person's life including their health, emotional well-being, relationships, and career. However, one needs to understand the causes and types of stress before looking for ways to manage it.

De-brief:

Scenario 1
The cause of stress was lack of time management and the habit of procrastinating. If Akash would have managed his time well, planned alternate ways to get up on time, finished prior tasks on time and planned for client meetings in advance then he wouldn't have faced stress.
**Scenario 2**
The cause of stress was lack of financial planning. Rahul should have planned his financial resources well in advance and saved some money for the rainy day. Also, differentiating between needs and wants and keeping a check on non-essential expenditure would have saved Rahul from this situation.

**Scenario 3**
Sometimes, stress is caused due to external factors instead of internal ones. In this case, the stress was unavoidable because we have no control over this customer care system. Every time, you will get in touch with a new executive and will have to explain all over again. This might cause stress but despite being frustrated and angry there is little that we can do about it. All Sheela could do was to find ways to calm herself down through some breathing exercises and meditation, reading some good book or listening to music and then start afresh.

**Scenario 4**
A positive, major life change can be a source of good stress. Regardless of how good the change is, it can be stressful. Stress caused by a positive and major life change can be beneficial because it causes a person to step out of their comfort zone and learn new skills. Here, Arpit may become a successful entrepreneur or learn new ways to do things differently.

Now let us see this scenario, can I have a volunteer to read out this case to the class.

---

**Do**

- Ask one of the participant who can volunteer and read out this scenario to the class.

**Scenario 5**
Rakesh lives in Kathmandu with his wife and two beautiful daughters Sarah and Sanya. Nepal was hit by a massive earthquake and Rakesh's building collapsed during the earthquake. During evacuation, Rakesh realised that though his wife and Sarah were fine and suffered only minor bruises, Sanya was nowhere in the scene. Panic stricken, he started calling her name and searching her frantically. A little later, he heard a meek voice from beneath the debris. He quickly removed the rubble to find a huge bed. Rakesh was pretty sure that Sanya was trapped underneath. Though he was badly bruised, he gathered all his courage and with all his might, he lifted the several-ton bed to save Sanya's life. Everyone was relieved to see Sanya alive and also extremely surprised to see this father's ability to access superhuman strength.

- Ask the audience to applaud for the participant after the scenario is read completely.
- Discuss the scenario, ask de-brief questions:
  - What kind of stress was Rakesh undergoing in this case?
  - Was the stress avoidable or manageable under the given circumstances?
  - What was the result of the stress?

**Say**

**De-brief:**
- Not all stress is harmful; good stress is actually energizing. This was a case of lifesaving stress, or hero stress, which is an important example of good stress. You may have heard stories in which a person performs an impossible feat of physical strength in order to save their life or the life of someone they love. This type of stress causing a surge of adrenaline is good for us.
Summarize

- Close the discussion by summarizing the tips to manage stress as given in the Participant Handbook.
- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.

Notes for Facilitation

- Keep printed copies of the activities/scenarios ready for the session.
- Put down the de-brief questions on a flip chart so that it can be displayed in the class during the activity.
- Encourage participation and make the discussions interactive.
# UNIT 9.2: Digital Literacy: A Recap

## Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Identify the basic parts of a computer
2. Identify the basic parts of a keyboard
3. Recall basic computer terminology
4. Recall the functions of basic computer keys
5. Discuss the main applications of MS Office
6. Discuss the benefits of Microsoft Outlook
7. Identify different types of e-commerce
8. List the benefits of e-commerce for retailers and customers
9. Discuss Digital India campaign will help boost e-commerce in India
10. Describe how you will sell a product or service on an e-commerce platform
9.2.1: Computer and Internet Basics: Basic Parts of a Computer

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Identify the basic parts of a computer
- Identify the basic parts of a keyboard
- Recall basic computer terminology
- Recall the functions of basic computer keys

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook
- Computer Systems with the required applications

Say
- Let's take a quick recap of the basic computer parts.
- Discuss 'Basic Parts of Computer' and 'Basic Parts of a Keyboard' with the class as given in the Participant Handbook.

Explain
- Explain all the parts of the computer and the keyboard by demonstrating on the real system.

Ask
- Do you know about internet?
- Have you ever used internet?
- Why do you think internet is useful?
- What was the last task you performed on internet?

Say
- Let's look at some basic internet terms.
- Discuss 'Basic Internet Terms' with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Summarize
- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
- Close the discussion by summarizing the importance of computer and internet for entrepreneurs.
Do

- Group the participants for the activity depending on the batch size and the number of computer systems available in the lab.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Ensure the participants complete the practical exercises assigned.

Practical

- Conduct a practical session.
- Ask the participants to assemble in the computer lab.
- Give some hands on practice exercises.
9.2.2: MS Office and Email: About MS Office

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the main applications of MS Office
- Discuss the benefits of Microsoft Outlook

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Computer Systems with MS Office

Ask

- What is the most frequent activity that you do on the computer?
- Do you know how to make presentations on the computer?

Say

- Give a brief introduction of MS Office as given in the Participant Handbook.
- Discuss the most popular office products. Explain in brief their application, benefits and working.
- **Microsoft Word** is a word processing program that allows for the creation of documents. The program is equipped with templates for quick formatting. There are also features that allow you to add graphics, tables, etc.
- **Microsoft Excel** is a tool for accounting and managing large sets of data. It can also simplify analysing data. It is also used to create charts based from data, and perform complex calculations. A Cell is an individual data box which will have a corresponding Column and Row heading. This gives the cell a name, referred to as the Cell Reference. There can be multiple pages in each workbook. Each page, or sheet, is called a Worksheet. When you open a new Excel file, it automatically starts you with three worksheets, but you can add more.

Explain

- Explain the working and frequently used features of Office on a real system.

Ask

- What do you know about e-mails?
- Do you have an email id?
- How often do you check your e-mails?

Say

- Communication is vital for every business. The fastest and the safest way to communicate these days are through emails. MS Outlook helps to manage your emails in a better way and also offers a host of other benefits.
- Discuss “Why Choose Microsoft Outlook?” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.
Do

- Ask the participants to assemble in the computer lab.
- Explain the working of Outlook on a real system.

Demonstrate

- Demonstrate how to create email id.
- Demonstrate how to write new mails, send mails.
- Demonstrate how to use MS Office application to create a letter and send it as attachment in an email.
- Demonstrate how to use other MS Office applications.

Practical

- Give some hands on practice exercises
- Group the participants for the activity depending on the batch size and the number of computer systems available in the lab.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.

Summarize

- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
9.2.3: E-Commerce

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Identify different types of e-commerce
- List the benefits of e-commerce for retailers and customers
- Discuss Digital India campaign will help boost e-commerce in India
- Describe how you will sell a product or service on an e-commerce platform

Resources to be Used

- Computer System with internet connection
- Participant Handbook

Ask

- How many of you have done shopping online?
- Can you name at least five shopping websites?
- What is the product that you most frequently buy online?
- Why do you do shopping online instead of going to the market?

Say

- Give a brief introduction of “What is E-commerce”. Refer to the Participant Handbook.
- E-commerce emerged in the early 1990s, and its use has increased at a rapid rate. Today, many companies sell their products online. Everything from food, clothes, entertainment, furniture and many other items can be purchased online.

Ask

- What other types of transactions have you performed on the internet other than buying products?

Say

- Give examples of e-commerce activities from Participant Handbook.

Team Activity

E-commerce examples
- Instruct the participants to list some of the payment gateways that they have used for e-commerce activities.
- Give them 5 minutes to make this list.
- Discuss payment gateways and transaction through payment gateways.
- Conclude the discussion by mentioning how important e-commerce has become in our day to day transactions.
Say

- E-commerce activities can be classified based on the types of participants in the transaction.
- Discuss “Types of E-commerce” from the Participant Handbook.

Do

- Discuss all types of E-commerce by giving examples and names of some popular websites which use them.
- Make the discussion interactive by asking the class to share some popular e-commerce sites of each type.

Say

- E-commerce activities bring a host of benefits for both, retailers and customers.
- Discuss benefits of E-commerce from the Participant Handbook.

Explain

- The majority of the population that uses E-commerce activities lives in tier-1 and tier-2 cities. To encourage the use of digital money in tier-3 and 4 areas, PM Mr. Modi launched the “Digital India Campaign”.
- Discuss “Digital India Campaign” from the Participant Handbook.
- By Digital India project the government will deliver services via mobile connectivity and in doing so, is expected to bring the internet and broadband to remote corners of the country. This connectivity will in turn enhance e-commerce activities also. Furthermore, the Indian Government is also modernizing India Post and aims to develop it as a distribution channel for e-commerce related services.

Say

- Now let us discuss how to sell a product using E-commerce.
- Every product has to be sold on a platform on the internet. Think of it as a shop that you have to sell your product. Now this shop can be your own or shared or rented. If the shop is your own or rented there will be only your products in that shop. If the shop is shared, there will be products of multiple sellers in that shop. A common example is a departmental store which has products from multiple brands in the shop.
- Similarly, in E-commerce the shop is the website where your products are displayed. If it is your own website it will exclusively showcase your products. In this case the cost that you will incur will be:
  - Developing the website
  - Hosting the website
  - Maintenance of the website
- If you rent a website it will also showcase your own products but the development, hosting and maintenance parts goes to the owner. This saves time and the cost to manage these activities.
- Smaller companies usually go for renting a website and the bigger ones develop their own website.
- The concept of shared platforms has become very popular in recent times. In this platform the sellers have to register and then they can sell their goods on a common platform. Among the most popular of these are Amazon, Myntra, Flipkart, etc.

Role Play

- Tell the participants to choose a product or service that they want to sell online.
- Tell them to write a brief note explaining how they will use existing e-commerce platforms, or create a new e-commerce platform to sell their product or service.
Ask
- How much money are you carrying in your wallet?
- Do you have a credit/debit card?
- How do you make payments while doing online shopping?

Say
- Demonetization has made carrying cash in the wallet very difficult. People either shop through cards or some other form of digital money.
- So what do you think is digital money?
- In this form the money is both paid and received digitally. There is no hard cash involved. It is an instant and convenient way to make payments.
- There are various types of digital payments. Let us discuss some of them in brief here.
- The first one is the most commonly used system i.e. the cards. Debit card, credit card, prepaid card, all fall under this category.
- Then is the e-wallet or the mobile wallet. This has become the most used form of digital money after demonetization. Examples are Paytm, state bank buddy, Freecharge, etc.
- Many other forms of digital money are also coming up in market like mobile apps, Aadhar card based payment, etc.

Do
- Demonstrate how to make and receive payments through digital models like Paytm and state bank buddy.

Ask
- Why do you think people have started using digital money instead of hard cash? Is demonetization the only reason?

Say
- Digital money gives a lot of advantages over the conventional hard cash. Some of them are:
  - Digital payments are easy and convenient. You do not need to take loads of cash with you, a mobile phone or a card will suffice.
  - With digital payment modes, you can pay from anywhere anytime.
  - Digital payments have less risk.

Summarize
- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
- Close the discussion by summarizing the importance of e-commerce and digital money.
UNIT 9.3: Money Matters

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
1. Discuss the importance of saving money
2. Discuss the benefits of saving money
3. Discuss the main types of bank accounts
4. Describe the process of opening a bank account
5. Differentiate between fixed and variable costs
6. Describe the main types of investment options
7. Describe the different types of insurance products
8. Describe the different types of taxes
9. Discuss the uses of online banking
10. Discuss the main types of electronic funds transfer
9.3.1: Personal Finance – Why to Save?

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Discuss the importance of saving money
• Discuss the benefits of saving money

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook

Ask
• How many of you save money?
• Why do you feel the need to save it?
• Do you plan your savings?
• Where do you keep the money you save?
• How do you use the money that you have saved?

Example
• Let's look at these two examples:

Example 1:
Suhani works in a good company and earns Rs.30,000 month. She always saves 5000 per month and keeps it aside as a personal saving. She keeps the money at home and has saved quite a lot. One day her mother has a medical emergency and has to be taken to the hospital. Her family is worried about the amount they have to spend for the treatment. It will cost them at least 40,000.

Suhani says tells her family not to worry and that she has about 50,000, which she has saved over the months.

Example 2:
Jasmeet works in the same company and earns the same as Suhani. She is very fond of shopping and spends most of her money on buying new clothes. At the end of the month, she is always asking her father for money as her pay is finished.

Ask
• Who do you identify with – Suhani or Jasmeet?
• How do you think Suhani manages to save money which Jasmeet is unable to do?

Say
• We should always set aside some and save some money from our monthly pay. The future is unpredictable.

• Saving money not only gives you a sense of financial security but it can be used in case of emergencies.

• Discuss “Importance of Saving” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
• What are the benefits of saving money?
• What does being financially independent mean to you?
Discuss “Benefits of Saving” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Now let us continue with Suhani’s story. Suhani has told her family not to worry and that she has about 50,000, which she has saved over the months. The family is happy about Suhani’s decision of saving money, which will be of great help for them now.

Suhani is going to the hospital today to pay the first instalment for the treatment. Suddenly finds only 35,000 in her cash box when she counts and does not remember using it. She has not kept any record and now she is upset.

Ask

- Was it a good decision by Suhani to save a part of her earnings every month?
- Was it a wise decision to keep all her savings as cash in a cash box?
- Could she have managed to save money in a better and more effective manner?
- Do you want to learn how to save money and use it effectively?

Say

Let’s learn personal saving with the help of a group activity.

Team Activity

Personal Finance- Why to save

- This activity has two parts:

  PART 1
  WAYS TO SAVE MONEY
  - You are earning 30,000/- per month. You have recently changed your job and have to move to a metropolitan city. You are now living as a paying guest paying 10,000/- per month. Your other estimated expenditures like travel, food, recreation would be around Rs. 17,000 per month.
  - Make a list of different ways to save money.

  PART 2
  HOW WILL YOU USE THE MONEY
  - After a year how much have you been able to save?
  - How will you use the money that you have saved?

Do

- Divide the class into groups of four.
- Instruct the participants to think and prepare a list of the various ways they can save money.
- Give the participants 10 minutes to prepare the list.
- Once done, instruct them to think of how they could use the money they have saved.
- Give the participants 10 minutes to prepare the list.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Activity De-brief

- What were the different ways you could save money?
- How much money were you able to save?
- How will you use the money you have saved in one year?
Say

- Discuss the importance of personal finance and why it is important to save money.

Summarize

You can summarize the session by discussing:

- The importance of saving money.
- Ways to save money.
- How the money saved can be used for different purposes.
9.3.2: Types of Bank Accounts, Opening a Bank Account

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

• Discuss the main types of bank accounts
• Describe the process of opening a bank account

Resources to be Used

• Account opening sample forms
• Participant Handbook

Ask

• How many of you save money?
• Where do you keep the money you save?
• How many of you have a bank account?
• What type of account do you have?

Example

Let's look at the given example:

Reena is in the third year of college but in the evening she gives tuitions for children living in her colony. She earns 15,000/- per month. As her students stay in different parts of the city, she has to walk a lot. To save time, she decides to buy a second hand scooter for herself. But she has to save money for it. Her class mate advises her to open a recurring deposit account in the bank. She goes to the bank close to her home. The personal manager gives her some forms to fill. She is confused as she has never done this before. Her elder sister has an account in the same bank. She asks for help from her sister. She goes to the bank the next day with her sister. The personal banker gives her a list of documents that she will need to submit with the form for opening an account. The banker advises her to open a 6 months recurring deposit.

Ask

• Do you try to save money monthly but have to spend it on unforeseen expenditure?
• Have you ever thought of depositing your savings in a bank?

Say

• Before opening a bank account, you need to know the types of accounts we have in India.
• Discuss “Types of Bank Accounts” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask

• Can someone say what are the different types of bank accounts?
Let's learn about the different types of bank accounts through an activity.

**Team Activity**
- Divide the class in four groups.
- Label the groups as savings account, current account, recurring account and fixed deposit.
- On a chart paper, ask them to write the key points of their account.

**Activity De-brief**
- Ask each group to present the key points of their account.

Now that you know about the four different types of accounts, let's learn how to open a bank account.

- Discuss “Opening a Bank Account” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.
- Discuss “Tips” that the participants should keep in mind while opening a bank account as given in the Participant Handbook.

**Ask**
- What are the main documents required for opening a bank account?
- What are some important points to ask the bank personnel while opening an account?

**Say**
- Mention officially valid KYC documents (refer to the Participant Handbook)
- Now, let's understand the procedure of opening a bank account through an activity.

**Team Activity**

**Opening a Bank Account**
- This activity is done in groups.
- Divide the class in groups of four or six.

**PART 1**

**FILLING A BANK ACCOUNT OPENING FORM**
- You have to fill a bank opening form.
- You can refer to the section “Opening a Bank Account” of your Handbook for reference.
- List all the steps that you will be required to fill in the form.
- List the documents that you needs for filling the form.
- Now fill in the form.

**Activity De-brief**
**How did you design the form?**
- What all details did you fill in the form?
- What were your KYC documents?
- How would this activity help you in future?
**Do**

- Instruct the participants to read the section “Opening a Bank Account” of the Participant Handbook.
- Give each group one sample account opening form.
- Give the participants 5 minutes to read the form.
- Give them 15 minutes to fill it.
- Assist them by explaining each category and how to fill it.
- Keep a check on time.
- Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

**Summarize**

**Note:**
- You can summarize the unit through a role play.
  - A person wanting to open an account in the bank.
  - What is the procedure that he will go through?
  - Discuss the key points of different types of bank accounts.
  - How to select the type of account
  - How to fill the account opening form.
- A sample account opening form is given in the following page for reference. Use it for the activity in the class.

**Sample Bank Account Opening form.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>XXX Bank</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Photograph</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SAVING BANK ACCOUNT OPENING FORM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Account No.:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of the Branch</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Village/Town</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sub District / Block Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>State</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSA Code / Ward No.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Village Code / Town Code</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applicant Details:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Full Name</th>
<th>Mr./Mrs./Ms.</th>
<th>First</th>
<th>Middle</th>
<th>Last Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Marital Status</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of Spouse/Father</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Name of Mother</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pin Code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tel No. Mobile</td>
<td>Date of Birth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aadhaar No.</td>
<td>Pan No.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MNREGA Job Card No.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupation/Profession</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annual Income</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Dependents</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Detail of Assets

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Owning House</td>
<td>Y/N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Owning Farm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Animals</td>
<td>Any other</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Existing Bank A/c. of family members / household

- Y / N
- If yes, No. of A/cs. __________

### Kisan Credit Card

- Whether Eligible: Y / N

I request you to issue me a **Rupay Card**.

I also understand that I am eligible for an Overdraft after satisfactory operation of my account after 6 months of opening my account for meeting my emergency/ family needs subject to the condition that only one member from the household will be eligible for overdraft facility. I shall abide by the terms and conditions stipulated by the Bank in this regard.

### Declaration:

I hereby apply for opening of a Bank Account. I declare that the information provided by me in this application form is true and correct. The terms and conditions applicable have been read over and explained to me and have understood the same. I shall abide by all the terms and conditions as may be in force from time to time. I declare that I have not availed any Overdraft or Credit facility from any other bank.

**Place:**

**Date:**

**Signature / LTI of Applicant**

### Nomination:

**I want to nominate as under**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name of Nominee</th>
<th>Relationship</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Date of Birth in case of minor</th>
<th>Person authorised in case to receive the amount of deposit on behalf of the nominee in the event of my /minor(s) death.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Place:**

**Date:**

**Signature / LTI of Applicant**

**Witness(es)**

1. __________________________

2. __________________________

*Witness is requires only for thumb impression and not for signature
9.3.3: Costs: Fixed vs. Variables: What are Fixed and Variable Costs?

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Differentiate between fixed and variable costs

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook
• Blank sheets of paper
• Pens

Ask
• What is cost?
• Will a telephone bill fall under the category of a fixed or variable cost?

Say
• Discuss: Fixed and Variable cost with examples. Let us do a small activity.

Team Activity
Identify the type of cost
1. Rent
2. Telephone bill
3. Electricity bill
4. Machinery
5. Insurance
6. Office supplies/ Raw materials
7. Employee salaries
8. Commission percentage given to sales person for every unit sold
9. Credit card fees
10. Vendor bills

Do
• Divide the class into two groups. Read out the list of costs given in the activity.
• Read out each item from the cost list and ask the groups in turns to identify whether it is a fixed or variable cost.
**Say**

- We saw that your utility bills like rent, electricity, telephone etc. are all fixed costs because you have to pay it every month.
- Variable costs is an expense which varies with production output or volume. For example commission, raw material etc.
- Discuss “Cost: Fixed vs. variables” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.
- Illustrate the relation between the costs with a graph.

```
Fixed Costs

Units

Variable Costs

Total Costs

₹
```

- Let’s learn the difference between fixed and variable cost with the help of an activity.

**Team Activity**

**Fixed vs. Variable Costs**

- This is a group activity.
  - You want to start your own entrepreneur business.
  - State the type of business you want to start.
  - List down all the cost or requirements for your business.
  - How will you differentiate between the fixed and variable cost.

**Activity De-brief**

- What is the total cost of your business?
- What are the fixed costs?
- What are the variable costs?
- How did you differentiate between the fixed and variable costs?

**Do**

- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into small groups of 4 or 6.
- Give each group a sheet of paper.
- Tell the participants that they have to start their own entrepreneur business.
- Ask them the type of business they want to start.
- Instruct them to differentiate between the fixed and the variable costs of the business they want to start.
- Give the participants 15 minutes to discuss and write.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.
Summarize

- Note: You can summarize the unit either by having a role play between a consultant and a budding entrepreneur explaining the differences between fixed and variable costs or by discussing the key points of the unit.

Notes for Facilitation

- Answers for the activity - Identify the type of cost

1. Rent (Fixed)
2. Telephone bill (Fixed)
3. Electricity bill (Fixed)
4. Machinery (Fixed)
5. Insurance (Fixed)
6. Office supplies/ Raw materials (Variable)
7. Employee salaries (Fixed)
8. Commission percentage given to sales person for every unit sold (Variable)
9. Credit card fees (Variable)
10. Vendor bills (Variable)
9.3.4: Investments, Insurance and Taxes

**Unit Objectives**

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Describe the main types of investment options
- Describe the different types of insurance products
- Describe the different types of taxes

**Resources to be Used**

- Participant Handbook

**Ask**

- Ask the participants- “What do you see first thing in when you get your mobile bill? Apart from the amount and due date do you have a look at the taxes you are being billed for?
- Why do you think people get their cars insured or have a medical insurance?
- You have saved money and want to invest it, how would you decide what is the best investment for your money?

**Example**

- Let's have a look at a few scenarios.

  Ranbir has sold his house and deposited the money in his bank. His Chartered Accountant tells him that he will have to re-invest the money otherwise he will have to pay capital tax. What is capital tax and how is it different from income tax?

  Jasmeet and Anup are blessed with a baby girl. They decide to have an insurance policy that will mature when their daughter is ready to higher education.

  Shivani is working in a corporate office and getting good pay. She will have to pay income tax so she decides to invest her money in tax saving schemes. She goes to the bank manager to discuss the best products in which she can invest.

**Say**

- Discuss the Investment, Insurance and Taxes as given in the Participant Handbook.

**Ask**

- How do investments, insurances and taxes differ from each other?

**Say**

- Let's learn the differences between the three by having an activity.

**Say**

- We will have a quiz today.
Team Activity

- The activity is a quiz.

Do

- Divide the class into groups of three and give a name to each group
- Explain the rules of the quiz. For each correct answer the group gets 1 mark. If the group is unable to answer the question is rolled over to the next group.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- On the blackboard write the names of the groups.
- Ask the questions of the quiz.
- Keep a score for the groups.
- Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.

Summarize

- Summarize the unit by discussing the key points and answering question

Notes for Facilitation

Questions for the quiz

1. What are bonds?
   *Bonds are instruments used by public and private companies to raise large sums of money.*

2. Who issues the bonds?
   *Private and public companies issue the bonds.*

3. Why are bonds issued?
   *To raise large amount of money as it cannot be burrowed from the bank.*

4. Who is the buyer of stocks and equities?
   *The general public is the buyer.*

5. What types of scheme is the Sukanya Samriddhi Scheme?
   *Small Saving Scheme*

6. What is the difference between mutual and hedge funds?
   *Mutual funds are professionally managed financial instruments that invest the money in different securities on behalf of investors. Hedge funds invest in both financial derivatives and/or publicly traded securities.*

7. Why is a loan taken from the bank to purchase real estate?
   *To lease or sell to make profit on appreciated property price.*

8. Name the two types of insurances?
   *Life Insurance and Non-life or general insurance*

9. Which insurance product offers financial protection for 15-20 years?
   *Term Insurance*

10. What is the benefit of taking an endowment policy?
    *It offers the dual benefit of investment and insurance.*

11. Mr. Das gets monthly return on one of his insurance policies. Name the policy?
    *Money Back Life Insurance*
Questions for the quiz

1. What are bonds?
   *Bonds are instruments used by public and private companies to raise large sums of money.*

2. Who issues the bonds?
   *Private and public companies issue the bonds.*

3. Why are bonds issued?
   *To raise large amount of money as it cannot be burrowed from the bank.*

4. Who is the buyer of stocks and equities?
   *The general public is the buyer.*

5. What types of scheme is the Sukanya Samriddhi Scheme?
   *Small Saving Scheme*

6. What is the difference between mutual and hedge funds?
   *Mutual funds are professionally managed financial instruments that invest the money in different securities on behalf of investors. Hedge funds invest in both financial derivatives and/or publicly traded securities.*

7. Why is a loan taken from the bank to purchase real estate?
   *To lease or sell to make profit on appreciated property price.*

8. Name the two types of insurances?
   *Life Insurance and Non-life or general insurance*

9. Which insurance product offers financial protection for 15-20 years?
9.3.5: Online Banking, NEFT, RTGS, etc.

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Discuss the uses of online banking
• Discuss the main types of electronic funds transfer

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook
• Computer System with internet connection
• Debit card

Ask
• When was the last time you visited a bank?
• How do you pay your bill for electricity and telephone?
• Have you ever tried to transfer money from one bank account to another bank account using the online banking facility?

Say
• Most of us lead a busy life. Time has become more important than money. In this busy schedule no one has time to stand in bank queues. That’s where Online Banking comes in. Online banking or internet banking means accessing your bank account and carrying out financial transactions through the internet.
• Discuss “What is online banking?” from the Participant Handbook.
• There are various advantages of online banking:
  • It saves time, as you need to visit the branch.
  • You can conduct your banking transactions safely and securely without leaving the comfort of your home.
  • Online Banking also gives you round the clock access.
  • Online Banking makes it possible for you to pay your bills electronically.

Do
• Show them how they can use the internet banking.
• Use the computer system and show the demo videos on how to use internet banking provided on most banking sites.
• Tell the class the various features of online banking:
  • Through their website set-up your online account.
  • Choose a secure username and password.
  • Set-up your contact information.
  • Once your information is verified, you are good to go.
  • Once you enter the portal explore all the features and learn your way through the portal.
• Discuss about maintaining the security of the online account.
Say

- One of the biggest advantages that online banking offers, as discussed earlier, is transferring money from one account to another. This transaction is called electronic funds transfer. Electronic transfers are processed immediately with the transferred amount being deducted from one account and credited to the other in real time, thus saving time and effort involved in physically transferring a sum of money.
- Discuss “Electronic Funds Transfer” from the Participant Handbook.

Do

- Discuss how to transfer money from one account to another using online banking (NEFT/RTGS, etc.).
- Illustrate with an example.

Summarize

- Close the discussion by summarizing the about online banking.
- Ask the participants if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
UNIT 9.4: Preparing for Employment & Self Employment

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Discuss the steps to follow to prepare for an interview
2. Discuss the steps to create an effective Resume
3. Discuss the most frequently asked interview questions
4. Discuss how to answer the most frequently asked interview questions
5. Identify basic workplace terminology
9.4.1: Interview Preparation: How to Prepare for an Interview?

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Discuss the steps to follow to prepare for an interview

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook

Ask
• Have you ever attended an interview?
• How did you prepare before going for an interview?

Say
• An interview is a conversation between two or more people (the interviewer(s) and interviewee) where questions are asked by the interviewer to obtain information from the interviewee.
• It provides the employer with an opportunity to gather sufficient information about a candidate and help them select the ideal candidate.
• It also provides the interviewee with an opportunity to present their true potential to the employer, build confidence and help make a decision about the job by asking questions regarding designation, salary, perks, benefits, promotions, transfers, etc.
• Let’s do an activity to understand how to prepare for interviews better.

Activity 1
• Introducing Yourself

Do
• Select a participant and ask him/her to answer the following questions: “What can you tell me about yourself.”
• Give the participant at least one minute to speak.
• Once he/she is done, ask the rest of the participant what they gathered about the participant who was providing information.
• Now repeat the exercise with five other participants.

Ask
• What information you should include when you are describing or introducing yourself in an interview?
• What information you should not include when you are describing or introducing yourself in an interview?
Do

- Congratulate each participant for sharing their points.
- Ask the audience to applaud for them.
- Ask de-brief questions to cull out the information from each group.
- Keep a check on time.

Activity 2

- Planning the right attire

Summarize

- Close the discussion by discussing ‘how to prepare for an interview’ as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- You can add the following points to it:
  - Tell the participants to create a positive and good impression in an interview. It is important for them to prepare for an interview beforehand.
  - The interviewer analyses not only your technical knowledge in relation to the job, but also whether or not you are a fit for the organization.
  - Every employer looks at the whole package and not just one or two things in isolation. Therefore, the way you dress and the way you present yourself is also important along with your skills and talents.
  - The participants will get only one chance to create a good first impression.
9.4.2: Preparing an Effective Resume: How to Create an Effective Resume?

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the steps to create an effective Resume

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Blank papers
- Pens

Ask

- When preparing for an interview, what are the most important things that you need to do?
- What documents do you carry with you, when you go for an interview?
- What is a resume?
- Why do you need a resume?

Say

- Resume is not just a sheet of paper with your qualifications printed on it.
- It is a selling tool that will help the employer to see how and what you can contribute for company.
- Talk about the steps involved in creating an effective/attractive resumes discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- Now let’s prepare a resume to understand the process in a better way.

Do

- This is an individual activity.
- Give the details of the activity.
- Instruct them to read the activity carefully.
- The participant is expected to make an attractive resume based on the information provided.
- Give the class 25-30 minutes to study the case and create a resume.
- At the end of 30 minutes, the participants should exchange the resume with the person sitting next to him or her.
- Every participant will evaluate the resume prepared with their fellow participants.

Say

- Do you think the candidate should apply for the job posting described in the advertisement?
- We have already discussed the steps involved in creating an effective/attractive resumes.
- Now let’s prepare a resume for the candidate details given in the activity.
Activity

Case Study Analysis

- In the first section of the activity, you are being given the information about a candidate who is applying for a particular job.
- In the second section, you are being given the detailed description of the job posting. Create a resume for the candidate to apply for the job posting.
- Use the information that has been provided about the candidate to create this resume.

Candidate Details

Nipesh Singla was born on 20th April, 1988 in Chandigarh, India. He currently resides at 1XX7, Sector XX D, Chandigarh –160018. His mobile number is 988XXXXX01, and e-mail address is nxxxxxxxla@gmail.com. Nipesh attended middle and senior school at Government Boys Senior Secondary School, Sector 15, Chandigarh. He has been a very talented boy since school. He was fond of painting and watching old Hindi movies. As part of a school charity program, he volunteered at the children's hospital during his senior years.

In July 2007, he joined Westwood School of Hotel Management, Zirakpur to pursue a diploma course in Hotel Management and Catering. After completing this course, he joined XYZ Group of Hotels as a Housekeeping intern in June 2010 for six months. In this role, he was responsible for cleanliness and maintenance of one floor in the hotel. Taking advantage of his strong interpersonal skills, he also got opportunities to make housekeeping arrangements for corporate meetings. While pursuing education, he gained working knowledge of Microsoft Word, Excel, Access and PowerPoint.

Nipesh is detail-oriented, flexible and adaptable. He has successfully worked with a diverse work force. He gelled well with his peers, both in college and during his internship. After completing the internship, his objective has been to find a job opportunity where he can use his skills and experience. Backed by experience, he is confident about his skills as housekeeping assistant.

Job Posting

* Do you see yourself as a HOUSEKEEPING SUPERVISOR?

What's your passion? Whether you're into cricket, reading or hiking, at IHG we are interested in YOU. At IHG, we employ people who apply the same amount of care and passion to their jobs as they do in their hobbies - people who put our guests at the heart of everything they do. And we're looking for more people like this to join our friendly and professional team.

THE LOCATION:

At the moment, we are looking for HOUSEKEEPING SUPERVISOR to join our youthful and dynamic team at Holiday Inn Amritsar, Ranjit Avenue in Amritsar, Punjab (India). Holiday Inn Amritsar is ideally located in Amritsar's commercial district on Ranjit Avenue with the world famous Golden Temple located only a short distance away. Sparkling chandeliers mark an incomparable arrival experience as you escape to the welcoming environment that is, Holiday Inn Amritsar. The fresh international brand to celebrate and explore Amritsar.

Salary: Negotiable

Industry: Travel / Hotels / Restaurants / Airlines / Railways

Functional Area: Hotels , Restaurants

Role Category: Housekeeping

Role: Housekeeping Executive/Assistant.

Desired Candidate Profile

Friendly, pleasant personality, Service - oriented.

You should ideally be Graduate/ Diploma holder in HM and at least 2 years of experience as a supervisor in good brand with good communication skills, English is a must.
In return we'll give you a competitive financial and benefits package. Hotel discounts worldwide are available as well as access to wide variety of discount schemes and the chance to work with a great team of people. Most importantly, we'll give you the room to be yourself.
*Please get in touch and tell us how you could bring your individual skills to IHG.

Education-
* UG: Any Graduate/ Diploma holder
* PG: Post Graduation Not Required

---

**Say**

- Now, let's share the resume with the fellow participant sitting next to you and evaluate each other's effort.

**Do**

- Congratulate each participant for making their first attempt towards creating an effective resume.
- As a follow up activity, you can suggest them to prepare their own resume and show it to you the next day.

**Summarize**

- Close the discussion by showing some effective resume samples to the candidates.
- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.

**Notes for Facilitation**

- Keep printed copies of the activity ready for the session.
- Put down the suggested format of the resume on the board while explaining the steps in preparing a resume.
- Do check the participants' resume and suggest necessary changes.
- Suggested example for the case presented:

  Nipesh Singla
  #1XX7, Sector XX-D
  Chandigarh-160018
  Mobile No: 91-988XXXXX01
  E-mail: nxxxxxxxxl@gmail.com

  **Objective:** Seeking an opportunity to use my interpersonal skills and experience to contribute to your company’s growth, profitability and objectives.

  **Professional strengths:**
  - Proficient in housekeeping
  - Experienced in and capable of working with a diverse work force
  - Team player and friendly in nature
  - Successful working in a multi-cultural environment
Nipesh Singla  
#1XX7, Sector XX-D  
Chandigarh-160018  
Mobile No: 91-988XXXXX01  
E-mail: nxxxxxxxxlax@gmail.com

**Objective:** Seeking an opportunity to use my interpersonal skills and experience to contribute to your company’s growth, profitability and objectives.

**Professional strengths:**
- Proficient in housekeeping
- Experienced in and capable of working with a diverse work force
- Team player and friendly in nature
- Successful working in a multi-cultural environment
- Detail oriented, flexible, and adaptable
- Knowledge of Microsoft Word, Excel, Access and PowerPoint
9.4.3: Interview FAQs

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Discuss the most frequently asked interview questions
- Discuss how to answer the most frequently asked interview questions

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook

Say

- Tell the participants you will provide them with interview situation and questions and they have to try to answer them.
- Tell them you will also explain the different ways to approach these questions.

Do

- Divide the class in pairs and ask the participants to perform a role play.
- One partner will play the role of the interviewer while the other will play the role of the interviewee.
- Tell them the interviewer can start the interview by asking the interviewee to introduce himself/herself.
- Call all the pairs one by one in front of the class to enact the role play.
- Follow the same pattern for all other situations.
- Time allotted for each situation is 8-10 minutes.
- Congratulate each participant for giving their input.
- Ask the class to applaud each time a team has completed their role play.
- Keep a check on time.

Role Play

Conduct a role play for the situation given.

Situation 1

- The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
  - What is your name?
  - Tell me something about yourself?
  - Can you tell me something about your family?
- Then, the interviewer will bluntly ask the following questions:
  - How do you explain this huge time gap in your resume?
  - What is the reason for this?
  - Weren’t you looking for a job or is it that no one selected you?
When you put information on your resume, you should be prepared to answer any questions about it.

Be present and focused on the questions being asked to you.

One way of tackling the blunt questions is to tell the interviewer you did not come across an opportunity where you were sufficiently satisfied with both the remuneration offered as well as the profile. Therefore, you waited for the right opportunity to come along while looking for an ideal job.

Conduct a role play for the situation given.

Role Play – Situation 2

The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
- What is your name?
- Tell me something about yourself?
- Can you tell me something about your family?

Then, at the end of the interview, ask the interviewee:
- There are over 200 people who have applied for this job, some with excellent work experience. Why should I hire you?

There is nothing wrong with stating your strengths and achievements. However, do not come across as arrogant or too boastful.

You need show the interviewee that you have unique skills or talents to contribute to the company. The interviewer needs to know how you stand apart from the rest of the crowd.

Tell the interviewer you are looking forward to working with the company and that you are a hard-working individual.

Conduct a role play for the situation given.

Role Play – Situation 3

The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
- What is your name?
- Tell me something about yourself?
- Can you tell me something about your family?

Then, lean forward, clasp your hands on the table and in a soft voice ask the interviewee:
- Did you ever experience any neglect or disregard from your previous office? In other words, did you ever suffer because your office or team displayed favouritism?

Keep this in mind: Do not criticize anyone during an interview.

You are free to express your opinion, however, your language, answers, body language, and the tone of your voice should remain constructive and neutral.

Since criticism will show you in negative light, you should keep your answers honest yet diplomatic.

You can tackle such questions by saying, “I got along well with most of my faculty and peers.”
Conduct a role play for the situation given.

### Role Play – Situation 4
- The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
  - What is your name?
  - Tell me something about yourself?
  - Can you tell me something about your family?
- Then very bluntly ask the interviewee:
  - How long do you plan to stay with this company if you are selected?
- After the candidate responds, ask sarcastically:
  - Do you seriously mean that?

**Say**

**De-brief:**
- Don’t provide unreal and idealistic answers.
- Your answers should be honest yet diplomatic. In a situation like this, the interviewer does not expect you to provide a specific timeline.
- You can say something like, “I would like to stay with the company as long as I can contribute constructively and develop as an employee, within the organization, professionally and financially.”

### Role Play – Situation 5
- The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
  - What is your name?
  - Tell me something about yourself?
  - Can you tell me something about your family?
- Ask him/her how important he/she thinks it is to be punctual in the corporate world.
- After he/she answers, look up sternly at the interviewee and in a crisp voice, say:
  - You were late for this interview by 10 minutes. That surely does not seem to be in line with what you just said?

**Say**

**De-brief:**
- Politely apologize for being late.
- You can add something such as, “I assure you this is not a habit”. All your future actions should be in line with this statement.
- Avoid giving any excuses.
- You might feel obligated to provide a justification for your tardiness, but the interviewer is not interested in that.
- Do not over apologize. Once this response is out of the way, turn your focus back to the interview.
Role Play

Conduct a role play for the situation given.

Role Play – Situation 6
- The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
  - What is your name?
  - Tell me something about yourself?
  - Can you tell me something about your family?
- After asking a few academic or job-related questions, ask the interviewee:
  - If you get this job, what salary package do you expect us to give you?

Say

De-brief:
- If there is no way for you to avoid this question, respond to the interviewer by providing a reasonable and well-thought out salary range.

Role Play

Conduct a role play for the situation given.

Role Play – Situation 7
- The interviewer will start by asking the interviewee a few generic questions such as:
  - What is your name?
  - Tell me something about yourself?
  - Can you tell me something about your family?
- Then, bringing the interview to a close, ask the interviewee:
  - Do you have any questions for me?

Say

De-brief:
- Ask relevant questions.
- Don't bombard the interviewer with questions.
- If you have questions about the result of the interview, you can limit your questions to 1 or 2. Keep them short and relevant like:
  - When will I be informed about the results of the interview?
  - What are the working hours?
  - Will the job require me to travel?

Explain

- Tell the participants to be prepared for answering different types of questions in an interview.
- Stay calm and focused, and take a moment to think about how you should respond. Always maintain a confident tone.
- Even if you don't intend to, your body language conveys your level of discomfort with a particular question. Try to keep your actions, tone, and gestures neutral.
- Maintain your composure while answering personal question.
Do

- Tell all the participants to form pairs again.
- Tell them to use the following list of frequently asked interview questions to conduct mock interviews.
- They will use all or some of these questions to conduct mock interviews with their partners.
- One partner will play the role of the interviewer while the other will play the role of the interviewee.
- After they are through asking and answering the questions, the roles will be reversed.
- The same list of questions will be used again.
- After each mock interview ask the interviewer to provide feedback and clear any doubts that may arise.
- Time allotted for each situation is 30-35 minutes.

Activity

Mock Interview Questions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mock Interview Questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tell me something about your family.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What qualities would you look for in a Manager or a Supervisor?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Why did you apply for this job?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you know about this company?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you deal with criticism?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How do you plan to strike a good work-life balance?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where do you see yourself five years from now?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Have you applied for jobs in other companies?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What kind of salary do you expect from this job?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do you have any questions for me?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summarize

- Close the discussion by discussing the questions in both activities.
- Ask the participants what they have learned from this activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
9.4.4: Work Readiness – Terms and Terminology

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Identify basic workplace terminology

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook
• Chart papers
• Blank sheets of paper
• Pens

Ask
• What do you understand by workplace terminology?
• Are offer letter and contract of employment the same?

Say
• Let's start this unit with an activity.

Team Activity
Workplace terminology
• This is a group activity conducted in three parts.

Part 1
Sheila received a call from the recruiter of MND Company. Before she is recruited by the company, think of the recruitment process she will have to go through. Start from the telephone call to signing her letter of acceptance. Write down all the words that come to your mind.

Activity De-brief
• Have the participants read out the words they have written
• Encourage all the participants to participate in the activity

Do
• Divide the class into small groups of 4 or 6.
• Instruct the participants that they will be doing a brainstorming activity.
• Give them one chart paper each. Tell them to divide the chart in two parts.
• Instruct them that they have to use one half of the chart paper now. The other half will be used later.
• The participants have to write all the words that come to their mind related to the recruitment process.
• Give them 10 minutes to do the activity.
• Tell them that there are no right or wrong answers.
• Keep a track of the time.
Say
- You all know quite a few words related to the terms used in the office.
- Let us talk about some new terms that have been missed out.
- Discuss “Work Readiness – Terms and Terminology” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
- Why is it important to know the workplace terms?
- How do they help?
- Can the words be categorised further?

Say
- Let’s now continue the activity.

Team Activity
Terms and Terminology
- This is again a group activity. The members of the group remain the same as in Activity 1.

Part 2
With the help of the new terms you have learned, make a flow chart of the hiring process of MND Company.

Activity De-brief
- Ask the groups to share the flow charts and the new terms they added while preparing the flow chart.

Do
- Instruct the participants that they have to use the 2nd half of the same chart they had used before.
- Using the new terminology and the terms they had previously written on the chart, they have to make a flow chart of the hiring process of the MND Company.
- Give them 10 minutes for this activity.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Say
- Let’s go ahead with the activity.

Team Activity
Terms and Terminology
- The activity continues with the same group members.

Part 3
Sheila now works for the MND Company. She is not aware of the company culture and policies. She goes to the HR Department to get her doubts clarified. Can you think of the terms for which she wants clarity? Make a list of those words.

Activity De-brief
- Ask the groups to share their list of words. Some of the words are benefits, comp. time, deduction, employee training, holidays, lay-off, leave, maternity leave, mentor, notice, paternity leave, and time sheet.
**Do**

- Instruct the participants to identify the key terms an employee of a company should know. They can use the same chart paper for this activity.
- Give them 5 minutes for this activity.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

**Summarize**

- Note: You can either summarize the key points of the unit or have a role play where an employee has just joined a company and the HR Manager explains the terms of employment.
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
1. Discuss the concept of entrepreneurship
2. Discuss the importance of entrepreneurship
3. Describe the characteristics of an entrepreneur
4. Describe the different types of enterprises
5. List the qualities of an effective leader
6. Discuss the benefits of effective leadership
7. List the traits of an effective team
8. Discuss the importance of listening effectively
9. Discuss how to listen effectively
10. Discuss the importance of speaking effectively
11. Discuss how to speak effectively
12. Discuss how to solve problems
13. List important problem solving traits
14. Discuss ways to assess problem solving skills
15. Discuss the importance of negotiation
16. Discuss how to negotiate
17. Discuss how to identify new business opportunities
18. Discuss how to identify business opportunities within your business
19. Explain the meaning of entrepreneur
20. Describe the different types of entrepreneurs
21. List the characteristics of entrepreneurs
22. Recall entrepreneur success stories
23. Discuss the entrepreneurial process
24. Describe the entrepreneurship ecosystem
25. Discuss the purpose of the Make in India campaign
26. Discuss key schemes to promote entrepreneurs
27. Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and risk appetite
28. Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and resilience
29. Describe the characteristics of a resilient entrepreneur
30. Discuss how to deal with failure
9.5.1: Concept Introduction (Characteristic of an Entrepreneur, types of firms/ types of enterprises)

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the concept of entrepreneurship
- Discuss the importance of entrepreneurship
- Discuss the characteristics of an entrepreneur
- Describe the different types of enterprises

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook

Say

- Let’s start this session with some interesting questions about Indian entrepreneurs.

Team Activity

Quiz Questions

1. Who is the founder of Reliance Industries?
   - Dhirubhai Ambani
2. Who is the Chairman of Wipro Limited?
   - Azim Premji
3. Who launched e-commerce website Flipkart?
   - Sachin Bansal and Binny Bansal
4. Who is the founder of Paytm?
   - Vijay Shekhar Sharma
5. Who is CEO of OLA Cabs?
   - Bhavish Aggarwal
6. Who is the founder of Jugnoo?
   - Samar Singla (autorickshaw aggregator)
7. Who is the founder of OYO Rooms?
   - Bhavish Aggarwal

Do

- Tell them that you will ask them few questions about a few entrepreneurs.
- Divide the class in to two groups.
- In turns ask the quiz questions to the groups.
- If the answer is incorrect pass the question to the other group.
- Share the answer if the groups are not able to answer.
- Congratulate the participants who answered correctly.
**Ask**

- What do you understand by entrepreneurs?
- What is the importance of entrepreneurship in today’s scenario?
- What do you think are the characteristics of successful entrepreneurs?
- What are different types of enterprises that an entrepreneur in India can own and run?

**Say**

- Talk about entrepreneurs, importance of entrepreneurship, characteristics of successful entrepreneurs, and different types of enterprises in India as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- Tell the participants, stories of successful Indian entrepreneurs- their struggles, the moments of heartbreak, the perseverance and triumph.
- Ask them if they know of any such entrepreneur.

**Summarize**

- Close the discussion by summarizing about the opportunities for entrepreneurs in India.

**Notes for Facilitation**

- Check out different Government schemes for small entrepreneurs. Share the information with the participants.
- You can tell them about the government websites like Start Up India, mudra.org.in etc.
- Discuss about various schemes and policies by the Government of India for entrepreneurs.
9.5.2: Leadership and Teamwork

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- List the qualities of an effective leader
- Discuss the benefits of effective leadership
- List the traits of an effective team

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook
- Blank sheets of paper
- Pens

Do
- Show the picture given below to the class.
- Ask them to quickly write on a piece of paper what comes to their mind after seeing the picture.
- Now ask them, “What do you understand from this picture?”
- Encourage participants to share their thoughts.

Say
- This picture depicts the qualities of a leader and the difference between a leader and a boss.
- A boss focuses on structure and inspires fear whereas a leader follows vision and generates enthusiasm.
- A boss blames employees for the breakdown whereas a leader fixes breakdowns.
- A boss depends on authority whereas a leader depends on goodwill.
- A boss says “I” and a leader says “We.”
- A boss drives employees whereas a leader coaches them.
- A boss takes credit whereas a leader gives credit.

Say
- Talk about leadership and leadership qualities for an entrepreneur as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
- Why is it important for a leader to be effective? How does it help the organization?
Team Activity

Long Chain

- This is a group activity.

Do

- Divide the class into 2 teams.
- Ask each team to create a chain using materials they have in class such as shoe laces, belts, paper, handkerchief, ribbons, etc.
- The team that creates the longest chain wins the game.
- Observe if the participants are interacting with their team or working in isolation.
- Share your observations with the class.

Say

De-brief:

- What did the winning team do differently?
- Who was responsible for the winning team’s success?
- How does this activity explain the role of teamwork in entrepreneurial success?

Say

- Tell the class that both the teams performed well.
- Discuss that the objective of this activity was to open communication channels and how this has been achieved.
- The participants should aim to keep the communication channels open when interacting with their peers and team members.
- It will set the pace and enthusiasm required for all the ensuing teamwork activities.
- Talk about teamwork and importance of teamwork in entrepreneurial success as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

Summarize

- Close the discussion by summarizing about the importance of teamwork for employees.
  - Teamwork helps in reducing stress for the employees.
  - Teamwork helps employers in generating more number of solutions to a problem and developing improved communication amongst employees.
- Ask the participants what they have learned from these exercises.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.

Say

- Let us discuss benefits of effective leadership as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
- “Out-of-the-box thinking” is one of the new leadership styles. It means thinking differently and from a new perspective.

Ask

- Do you consider yourself a team player?
Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the importance of listening effectively
- Discuss how to listen effectively
- Discuss the importance of speaking effectively
- Discuss how to speak effectively

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook

Activity 1

Activity – Chinese Whisper

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1: Form a circle.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 2: Start a whisper chain. Any one participant will whisper a message into his/her neighbour’s ear. No one else must hear the message. The message can be serious or downright silly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3: The next person who first heard the message should whisper the message very quickly to the person sitting next to them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 4: The game goes on until the last person says whatever they heard out loud and the first person reveals the real message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compare them and have a great laugh!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ask

De-brief questions:

- Was the original message the same as the message that is communicated at the end of the game?
- Why do you think there was a difference in the messages?

Say

- No, the original message was not same at the end of game.
- The barriers to communication like language, disturbance and noise, poor listening skills, boredom, poor speaking skills, etc. are the potential reasons this happens.
- There are various aspects to communication. Speaking skills and listening skills are two major components to any communication. There is always some room for improvement in the way we communicate.
- It is important to accept the reality of miscommunication and work to minimise its negative impacts.
Communication is a two-way process where people exchange information or express their thoughts and feelings.

It involves effective speaking and effective listening.

If I go to the store to get bread, I exchange money for the bread. I give something and get something in return. Communication takes place in the same manner. You have to provide and receive information for communication to take place.

Let’s play a game to understand effective listening process better.

How often do you hear these statements?

- “You’re not listening to me!”
- “Why don’t you let me finish what I’m saying?”
- “You just don’t understand!”

What do you think the other person is trying to convey to you through these sentences?

We will not talk about the importance of listening effectively as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

This is a class activity.

The participants need to answer the questions they hear.

Instruct them to listen carefully.

You will read it at a stretch and if need be repeat it once more.

Tell the participants to raise their hand if they know the answer to the question asked.

Keep a check on time.

Is there any law against a man marrying his widow’s sister?

If you went to bed at eight o’clock at night and set the clock’s alarm to ring at nine o’clock, how many hours of sleep would you get?

Do they have a 26th of January in England?

If you had only one match and entered a dark room that had a kerosene lamp, oil heater, and a wood stove, what would you light first?

The Delhi Daredevils and the Chennai Super Kings play five IPL matches. Each wins three matches. No match was a tie or dispute. How is this possible?

There was an airplane crash. Every single person died, but two people survived. How is this possible?

If an airplane crashes on the border of two countries, would unidentified survivors be buried in the country they were travelling to or the country they were travelling from?

A man builds an ordinary house with four sides except that each side has a southern exposure. A bear comes to the door and rings the doorbell. What is the colour of the bear?
Answers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Answer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>There’s no law against a man marrying his widow's sister, but it would be the neatest trick in the book since to have a widow, the man would have to be dead.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You’d get one hour’s sleep since alarm clocks do not know the difference between morning and night.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oh, yes. They have a 26th of January in England. They also have a 27th, a 28th, and so on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>First of all, you would light the match.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who said the Delhi Daredevils and the Chennai Super Kings were playing against each other in those games?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Every SINGLE person died, but those two were married.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You can’t bury survivors under any law especially if they still have enough strength to object.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The bear that rang the doorbell would have to be a white bear. The only place you could build a house with four southern exposures is at the North Pole where every direction is in South.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ask

De-brief question:
- What were the barriers that came into your way of listening?
- How can you overcome barriers to listening?

Say

- There is a difference between hearing and listening.
- If you don’t listen properly, the message may be misunderstood.
- Be open-minded while listening to someone.
- It is important to listen effectively and carefully without making assumptions.

Activity 3

Elevator Pitch:
You are in the lift of a hotel and you bumped into your former client who is a famous businessman. He has financed a lot of small business ventures and can finance your new start-up too. After exchanging pleasantries, he asks you what your new company does. You open your mouth, and then pause. Where do you even begin?

Then, as you try to organize your thoughts, his meeting is called, and he is on his way. If you would been better prepared, you’re sure that he would have stayed long enough to schedule a meeting with you too.

If you were given another chance, what would you have said to this person?

Do

- Start off the task by providing a beginning sentence to get the story started, and then go around the classroom getting each one to add a new sentence to keep the story going.
- This task should be done spontaneously allowing only a little time to think (30 seconds).
- For example: There was once a student who was looking for a job after graduation.
Tell the participants to follow these steps to create a great pitch, but bear in mind that you’ll need to vary your approach depending on what your pitch is about.

1. **Identify Your Goal:** Start by thinking about the objective of your pitch. For instance, do you want to tell the potential clients about your organization? Do you have a great new product idea that you want to pitch to an executive or do you want a simple and engaging speech to explain what you do for a living?

2. **Explain What You Do:** Start your pitch by describing what your organization does. Focus on the problems that you solve and how you help people. Ask yourself this question as you start writing: what do you want your audience to remember most about you? Keep in mind that your pitch should excite you first. After all, if you don’t get excited about what you’re saying neither will your audience. People may not remember everything that you say, but they will likely remember your enthusiasm.

3. **Communicate Your USP:** Your elevator pitch also needs to communicate your unique selling proposition or USP. Identify what makes you, your organization or your idea unique. You’ll want to communicate your USP after you’ve talked about what you do.

4. **Engage with a Question:** After you communicate your USP, you need to engage your audience. To do this, prepare open-ended questions (questions that can’t be answered with a “yes” or “no” answer) to involve them in the conversation. Make sure that you’re able to answer any questions that he or she may have.

5. **Put it all Together:** When you’ve completed each section of your pitch, put it all together. Then, read it aloud and use a stopwatch to time how long it takes. It should be no longer than 20-30 seconds. Remember, the shorter it is, the better!

**Example:**

Here’s how your pitch could come together:

"My company deals with cloth retail online business and we use various e-commerce platforms to sell our products. This means that you can do shopping with ease and spend time on other important tasks. Unlike other similar companies, we have a strong feedback mechanism to find out exactly what people need. This means that, on average, 95 percent of our clients are happy with our products. So, how can you help us in creating our own web portal?"

6. **Practice:** Like anything else, practice makes perfect. Remember, how you say it is just as important as what you say. If you don’t practice, it’s likely that you’ll talk too fast, sound unnatural or forget important elements of your pitch. Set a goal to practice your pitch regularly. The more you practice, the more natural your pitch will become. Practice in front of a mirror or in front of colleagues until the pitch feels natural.

**Summarize**

Close the discussion by summarizing how to speak effectively as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
9.5.4: Problem Solving & Negotiation Skills

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

• Discuss how to solve problems
• List the important problem solving traits
• Discuss ways to assess problem solving skills
• Discuss the importance of negotiation
• Discuss how to negotiate

Resources to be Used

• Participant Handbook

Ask

• What is a 'problem'?
• What do you think are the problems you may face in the process of becoming a successful entrepreneur?

Say

• Discuss the definition of problem as given in the Participant Handbook.
• In a hurdle race the hurdles are the obstacles on the way to reach your goal.
• Similarly, obstacles are the hurdles you may face while reaching your goal i.e. to set-up your own business. Your goal will be to reach the finishing line after crossing these hurdles.

Ask

• What do you do when you face a problem?
• How do you resolve it? You can pick examples from the question asked previously 'the problems they are likely to face in the process of becoming a successful entrepreneur'.

Say

• Discuss how to solve problems as given in the Participant Handbook.

Team Activity

• This is a group activity.
• The groups will solve the problem and come up with the best solution in each case.

1. Unable to arrange for some extra finance for setting up a beauty parlour. The loan sanctioned and disbursed is not enough. You have tried all your contacts, friends and relatives. But unable to manage the extra amount. Bank will not sanction more amount as you have used up the complete sanction limit.
2. You have rented a space for your business and all arrangements are done. You will be operating from the office space rented in two days. Now the owner comes up to you and says he wants to sell the place and wants you to vacate in 15 days.
3. You have just set up your business and need extra human resource. You have tried invieing a few also tied up with an agency for getting the right candidate. But you are unable to get the right candidate. If the candidate is good, you cannot offer the salary demanded. If the candidate agrees to the salary, he/she has other demands like working hours to be reduced, leaves etc. which may not work for your set up.
**Do**
- Divide the class into three groups. Give one scenario to each group.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Ask the groups to build on the scenario and present their solution as a role play.

**Say**

**De-brief questions:**
1. What was the problem?
2. Is there any other alternative solution?
3. Is this the best solution presented?

**Ask**
- Try to think of some people around you who are able to solve problems very easily. Even you or your friends might be approaching them when there is a problem. What qualities do they have? What personality traits do such people possess?

**Say**
- Discuss the important traits for problem-solving as given in the Participant Handbook.

**Ask**
- In order to build a successful organization, you need to hire people who possess good problem-solving skills. How would you assess the level of problem-solving skills of potential candidates before hiring them?

**Say**
- Discuss how to assess for problem-solving skills as given in the Participant Handbook.

**Summarize**
- Ask the participants the things that they have learnt so far.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
- Summarize the discussion on problem solving.

**Activity**
- The activity is to organise an election event. Select three volunteers from the group. They have to give a speech on their election manifesto to the class. They have to negotiate with the fellow participants and convince them to vote for them. The best negotiator will win the election.

**Do**
- Ask three participants to volunteer for the activity.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.
Ask

- Out of the three contestants, whom would you support? Why? What did they say or do which convinced you to make your decision?
- Have you ever tried to negotiate in your personal or professional life?
- Ask the class to share some of their experiences where they have been able to strike a deal by negotiating.

Say

- Discuss “What is Negotiation?” as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask

- Why is it important to negotiate? As an entrepreneur, where do you think that negotiation skills will be needed?

Say

- Discuss the importance of negotiation while starting a business as given in the Participant Handbook.

Say

- Discuss the important steps to negotiate as given in the Participant Handbook.

Role Play

- Conduct a role play activity.
- Ask the participants to assemble together.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.

Do

- Divide them into groups of four (4) (depending on the batch size).
- Give them the hand-outs for role play scenarios.
- Two groups to be given scenarios on problem solving.
- Other two groups to be given scenarios on negotiation.
- The groups will build on the scenarios and prepare for the role play.
- Give the groups at least 5 mins to discuss and be ready with the role play.
- Invite each group one by one to come and present their role play.

Problem solving Scenario 1

Avinash has a Mobile Repair Store in Allahabad. His outlet is one of the most popular one in the vicinity and he has great rapport with his customers. He is always well-dressed, jovial and full of energy.

It’s around 11 AM, when a customer barges in to the shop and starts shouting at Avinash for giving her back the instrument which is still not working. The screen of her mobile is also cracked from one side. Avinash remembered thoroughly checking the handset before handing it over to the customer. The customer threatens to sue the company and to go to Consumer Court for cheating her.
Problem solving Scenario 2
You are running a successful small scale business, Shreeji Aggarbattis. Your staff members do door to door selling and organise marketing campaigns in local markets. Your brand has established its name in last few years. Recently, lot of customers have been coming to you and lodging complaints that your staff members indulge in malpractices. Few of them informed you that a staff member engaged them in a friendly conversation. In the meanwhile, the other gave them lesser packets of aggarbattis than they paid for. Another set of customers lodged complaint about the misconduct and rude behaviour of a particular staff member. You often hear from your customers that the orders don’t get delivered on time or wrong products get delivered. You have already been struggling with shortage of staff and such complaints are a serious concern as it is hampering your brand image. What strategies will you adopt to solve this problem?

Negotiation Scenario 1
You have interviewed a prospective new employee who could be a key member of your new entrepreneurial venture. The new person is demanding a salary that is 20% higher than you thought based on your business plan. Finances are tight, yet you believe this person could make a significant impact on future profits. If you paid the required salary for the new person, then you would have to restructure your entire business plan. You’ve been searching for an individual with this skill level for three months. to the candidate is waiting for your response. Now you have to call him in to make the final negotiations.

Negotiation Scenario 2
You are a young entrepreneur who has just registered his start up project and applied for a bank loan accordingly. You receive a letter saying that your loan application has been rejected as your start up idea did not appeal to the bank and they think that it is not a revenue generating model. You have taken an appointment to meet the manager and show your negotiation skills to get your loan approved.

Notes for Facilitation
Facilitating Role Plays
Preparing for the activity
1. Carefully review the details of the scenario and the character descriptions.
2. Become familiar with the key issues being addressed in the scenario.
3. Study the provided material so that you are ready to address issues related to the situations depicted in the role-plays.
4. Anticipate and know how to address issues participants might raise during the activity.

Conducting the activity
1. Introduce the activity. Emphasize that role-playing provides participants with an opportunity to apply their new knowledge, skills, and tools in situations that simulate actual interactions with customers.
2. Ask participants to form pairs. Direct the members of each group to choose who will play the roles. Remind the groups that each participant should be given the opportunity to play/practice the different roles.
3. Conduct a demonstration so that participants become familiar with the expectations related to the roles and support materials.
4. Give the pairs/groups 10 to 15 minutes to conduct the role-play (depending on the duration of the session).
5. After all the groups have finished with the role-play, conduct a debriefing session on each role-play.
6. Ask the groups to take five minutes to talk about what happened during the role-play. The groups should discuss the questions given in the debriefing for each role-play. Encourage participants to provide constructive criticism during their discussions.

Summarize
• Wrap the unit up after summarizing the key points and answering questions.
9.5.5: Business Opportunity Identification: Entrepreneurs and Opportunities

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Discuss how to identify new business opportunities
- Discuss how to identify business opportunities within their business

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook
- Blank sheets of paper
- Pens

Ask
- How does an entrepreneur identify an opportunity?
- What do you think are the common queries or concerns faced by entrepreneurs?
- How can you identify new business opportunity?

Say
- Let’s talk about opportunity, common queries or concerns faced by entrepreneurs, idea as an opportunity, factors to consider when looking for opportunities, ways to identify new business, and opportunity analysis as discussed in Participant Handbook.
- Let’s do an activity to understand ways to identify business opportunities within your business.

Do
- Tell the class that this is an individual activity.
- Tell the participants to create a matrix on their notebooks.
- There will be four boxes in your matrix.
- Strength, Weakness, Opportunity and Threats will be the four headings of the matrix. This is called the SWOT matrix.
- Read out the questions to them and tell the participants they need to answer the questions asked in each matrix.
- Tell them they can also use their own understanding of themselves to fill the SWOT matrix.

Activity
Do your SWOT analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Strength</th>
<th>Weakness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What are your strengths?</td>
<td>What are your weaknesses?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What unique capabilities do you possess?</td>
<td>What do your competitors do better than you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do you do better than others?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What do others perceive as your strengths?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Opportunity</th>
<th>Threat</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What trends may positively impact you?</td>
<td>Do you have solid financial support?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What opportunities are available to you?</td>
<td>What trends may negatively impact you?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do

• Congratulate everyone for the class activity.
• Ask the audience to applaud for themselves.
• Allot the participants sufficient time to complete this activity, but do keep a check on time.
• Ask de-brief questions to cull out information from the participants.

Ask

De-brief questions:
• What are your weaknesses according to your SWOT analysis?
• Do you think you can change your weakness into strength? How?
• Do you think you can work on your threats? How?

Summarize

• Close the discussion by summarizing ways to identify business opportunities within your business.
• Ask the participants what they have learned from this exercise.
• Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
## 9.5.6: Entrepreneurship Support Eco-System

### Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Explain the meaning of entrepreneur
- Describe the different types of entrepreneurs
- List the characteristics of entrepreneurs
- Recall entrepreneur success stories
- Discuss the entrepreneurial process
- Describe the entrepreneurship ecosystem
- Discuss the purpose of the 'Make in India' campaign
- Discuss the key schemes to promote entrepreneurs

### Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Chart papers
- Marker pens
- Pencils
- Colour pencils
- Scale
- Eraser
- Other requisite stationery material

### Ask

- Do you think that entrepreneurs need support?
- What do you think is an eco-system?
- What do you think 'entrepreneurship support eco-system' means?

### Say

- Let's learn what entrepreneurship support eco-system means.
- Discuss 'Entrepreneurship Support Eco-System' as given in the Participant Handbook.

### Ask

- Can you define entrepreneurship support eco-system?
- What are the key domains of the support eco-system?

### Say

- Let's learn more about these domains by conducting an activity.
- You have to make a poster showing the components of the six main domains of entrepreneurship support eco-system.

### Team Activity

- Making a poster showing the entrepreneurship support eco-system.
Do

- Divide the class into groups of four or six.
- Hand out chart paper and coloured pens.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Go around checking the progress of each group.
- Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.

**Activity De-brief**

Ask each group to display their poster and explain the key domains of entrepreneurship support eco-system.

![Diagram of entrepreneurship support eco-system]

Ask

- What kind of government support eco-system is available for entrepreneurs in India?

Say

- Discuss 'Make in India' campaign as given in the Participant Handbook.

Team Activity

- Presentation on key schemes to promote entrepreneurs

Do

- Divide the class into pairs.
- Number each pair from 1-15.
- Assign a scheme, same as their group number, to each group.
- Ask them to read the scheme carefully and present it to the class.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Go around checking the progress of each group.
- Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.

**Activity De-brief**

- Ask each group to explain the scheme offered by government to promote entrepreneurs.

Summarize

- Summarize the unit by discussing the key points and answering questions the participants may have.
9.5.7: Risk Appetite & Resilience

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and risk appetite
- Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and resilience
- Describe the characteristics of a resilient entrepreneur

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Chart papers
- Blank sheets of paper
- Pens
- Marker pens

Ask

- Can you define risk or explain what constitutes a risk?
- What do you people mean when they say, “This may be a risky proposition”?
- What risks are they talking about?

Example

- Let’s have a look at these two examples:

Rohit and his family were travelling by car from Delhi to Nainital. It was their second trip there. Rohit was familiar with the road. His friends told him that the highway after Rampur was in a bad condition. They advised him to take a shortcut and turn left from Moradabad and take the Kaladhungi road. This road is in a better condition.

Since he was going with his family, and did want take the risk of getting lost, he left early. He took the Kaladhungi road and reached Nainital well in time.

Suresh and his family too were travelling by car from Delhi to Nainital. It was their second trip there. His friends too advised him to take a shortcut and turn left from Moradabad and take the Kaladhungi road as this road was in a better condition.

Suresh too decided to take the Kaladhungi road but he left Delhi in the afternoon. It was dark by the time he reached Kaladhungi, and he was sure that he was taking the correct turn. As it was late, he could not find anyone to give him directions. He ended up being in an unknown place that was scarcely inhabited.

Say

- Let’s see what type of risks Rohit and Suresh took.
- Discuss 'Risk Appetite and Resilience' with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Say

- Let’s learn more about risk appetite and resilience with the help of an activity.
Team Activity

Risk Appetite
- This is a group activity.
  - In the previous unit, you read success stories of Mr Dhirubhai Ambani and Dr Karsanbhai Patel.
  - Mr Ambani left his job and started his company Reliance with just Rs. 50,000/-.
  - Dr Patel kept his job, went door-to-door to sell Nirma, and only when the brand started gaining popularity did he start his own company.
  - What types of risk did both of them take?
  - What risk factors, do you think, did they keep in mind before launching their company?
  - Write the Risk Appetite Statement of both the companies.

Activity De-brief
- Who took a greater risk?
- What are the differences between the Risk Appetite Statement of both the companies?

Do
- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into small groups of 4.
- Give each group a chart paper.
- Tell the participants that they have to evaluate the risks taken by Mr Dhirubhai Ambani and Dr Karsanbhai Patel.
- Give the participants 15 minutes to discuss and write.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Ask
- Do you think all entrepreneurial ventures are successful?
- What happens if the first venture is not successful?
- Should the entrepreneur stop when faced with challenges or face them?

Example
- Let's have a look at the following example:

  Vijay Shekhar Sharma is the founder of Paytm, which is a giant Indian e-commerce. He was born in a middle-class family in Uttar Pradesh. He started his first job at an MNC. He quit after six months and built a company One97 with his friends. As One97 grew bigger, it needed more money because it was running more servers, bigger teams, and had to pay royalty. At that time, the tech bubble popped and technology companies were running in losses. Finally, money ran out. So One97 took loans and then more loans at higher rates of interest, as high as 24 per cent, and became caught in a vicious cycle.

  In 2014, Paytm was launched with online wallet services after which, the company enabled online payment transactions. The company got licenses from RBI in 2016 to launch India’s first ever payment bank. Moreover, the main motive of Paytm was to transform India into a cashless economy.

  After demonetization came into effect, Vijay Shekhar Sharma started promoting online and digital transactions to deal with the cash crunch. In fact, the service of the company’s mobile wallet is accepted across India. The logo of Paytm is now popular almost everywhere from tea stalls to major companies.
Let's see what qualities made Vijay Shekhar Sharma a resilient entrepreneur.
Discuss Entrepreneurship and Resilience with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Let's learn more about entrepreneurship and resilience with the help of an activity.

**Team Activity**

**Entrepreneurship and Resilience**
- This is a group activity.

- Think of some entrepreneurship ventures that faced challenging times, but later resulted in success stories.
- Who is the founder of that company?
- What challenging times did it face?
- How did it overcome those challenges?
- List the resilient characteristics of the entrepreneur.

**Activity De-brief**
- Each group to give their presentation.
- Why did you choose this company?
- What is the success story of the company?

**Do**

- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into small groups of 4.
- Give each group a chart paper.
- Tell the participants that they have to think of an entrepreneur who faced challenging times, but eventually succeeded.
- Give the participants 15 minutes to discuss and write.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

**Summarize**

- You can summarize the key points of the unit.
- Ask the participants what they learned from the activities.
- Clarify any questions or doubts they might have.
9.5.8: Success and Failures

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- Discuss how to deal with failure

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook

Ask
- Have you heard the quote 'nothing is impossible'?
- What do you think it means?
- Do you think that all successful entrepreneurs became famous overnight or did they have to struggle or face failure before succeeding?

Example
- Let’s have a look at this example.

Shah Rukh Khan, also known as, SRK or King Khan is a force to reckon with. Did he achieve stardom overnight? Shah Rukh Khan, who has seen many struggles in his life – he has slept on streets, struggled to support himself and his sister at a very young age, and lost his parents very early in life, which led to his sister seeking mental health support. Amidst all the chaos and challenges, he kept pushing himself, and today he stands tall as the 'Badshah of Bollywood'. Certainly those years were not easy for him.

When he was young, he stood at Marine Drive and said, “I will rule this city one day”. Failure was not just his companion during or before his stardom, it is still a substantial part of his life. Success does not come easy. What made him a star was his acceptance of failure and the urge to improve.

Say
- How do you define success and failure?
- What is fear?
- Discuss “success and failure” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
- Have you felt or experienced fear?
- What led you to feel that emotion?
- How did you handle it?

Say
- Let’s learn the about success and failure with the help of an activity.
Team Activity

- Divide the class into groups of four.
- Instruct them to think of one scenario where they have to interview a successful entrepreneur.
- Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
- Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.
- They have to choose one person from the group as the interviewee and one as the interviewer.
- Go around and make sure they have understood what is to be done and are discussing the roles properly.
- Check that everyone understands their role. Give clarifications if needed. Give the participants about 5 minutes to discuss and decide their roles.
- Ask the groups to stop the discussion as soon as the time is over.
- Invite each group one by one to come and present their interview as a role play.

Notes for Facilitation

Facilitating Role Plays

Preparing for the activity
1. Carefully review the details of the scenario and the character descriptions.
2. Become familiar with the key issues being addressed in the scenario.
3. Study the provided material so that you are ready to address issues related to the situations depicted in the role plays.
4. Anticipate potential questions that might be raised by the participants and be ready to address them.

Conducting the activity
1. Introduce the activity. Emphasize that role playing provides participants with an opportunity to apply their new knowledge, skills, and tools in situations that simulate actual interactions with customers.
2. Ask participants to form pairs. Direct the members of each group to choose who will play the roles. Remind the groups that each participant should be given the opportunity to play/practice the different roles.
3. Conduct a demonstration so that participants become familiar with the expectations related to the roles and support materials.
4. To maintain spontaneity of the interactions during the role play, ask the participants not to discuss the details of their roles prior to the role play.
5. Give the pairs 15-20 minutes to conduct the role play.
6. Circulate among the groups to answer any questions that may arise and provide guidance as needed.
7. After all the pairs have finished with the role play, conduct a de-briefing session on each role play.
8. Ask the groups to take five minutes to talk about what happened during the role play. The groups should discuss the questions given in the de-briefing for each role play. Encourage participants to provide constructive criticism during their discussions.
9. Conclude the activity by asking participants to think about whether and how they might use scripted role plays in their real life.

Summarize

- Wrap the unit up after summarizing the key points and answering questions.
UNIT 9.6: Preparing to be an Entrepreneur

Key Learning Outcomes

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

1. Discuss how market research is carried out
2. Describe the 4 Ps of marketing
3. Discuss the importance of idea generation
4. Recall basic business terminology
5. Discuss the need for CRM
6. Discuss the benefits of CRM
7. Discuss the need for networking
8. Discuss the benefits of networking
9. Discuss the importance of setting goals
10. Differentiate between short-term, medium-term and long-term goals
11. Discuss how to write a business plan
12. Explain the financial planning process
13. Discuss ways to manage your risk
14. Describe the procedure and formalities for applying for bank finance
15. Discuss how to manage their own enterprise
16. List the important questions that every entrepreneur should ask before starting an enterprise
9.6.1: Market Study/ The 4Ps of Marketing/ Importance of an IDEA: Understanding Market Research

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss how market research is carried out
- Describe the 4 Ps of marketing
- Discuss the importance of idea generation

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Chart papers
- Markers pens
- Blank sheets of paper

Ask

- Suppose, you want to open a restaurant, what are the factors you will consider?
- How will you promote your restaurant?

Example

- Let's have a look at this example.
  Arjun was an MBA working in a company. But he wanted to start a low cost budget hostel for foreign tourists coming to India. He did a lot or market research before starting the project. Based on the information he gathered, he made his business plan. His hostel is now flourishing and he is thinking of expanding to other tourist destinations.

Say

- Discuss “Market Study” with the participants. Refer to the Participant Handbook.
- Let's learn about market study and research with the help of an activity.

Team Activity

Market Study
- This is a group activity.
- You want to start your own tuition centre.
- What type of research will you do?

Activity De-brief
- Ask each group to come forward and give a brief presentation.
- Encourage other groups to be interactive and ask questions.
- What factors did you keep in mind while doing your research?
- Based on our research would you go ahead and open a tuition centre?
Do

- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into small groups of 4 or 6.
- Give each group a chart paper.
- Tell the participants that they have to start their own tuition centre.
- Give the participants 10 minutes to discuss and write the research work they need to do.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Say

- By opening a tuition centre you are offering a service.

Ask

- What factors will you keep in mind before opening it?

Say

- Discuss “The 4Ps of Marketing” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Say

- Let's learn about the 4Ps of Marketing with the help of an activity.

Team Activity

4 Ps of Marketing

- This is a group activity.
- You have to sell a pen to four different segments:
  1. Rural villagers
  2. Rural middle class
  3. Urban middle class
  4. Upper end rich people (Niche market)

Keeping the 4Ps of Marketing in mind, what marketing strategy will you design to sell the pen?

Activity De-brief

- Ask each group to present their strategy.
- Encourage other groups to be interactive and ask questions.

Do

- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into four groups.
- Give each group a chart paper.
- Assign each group a target audience for selling the pens:
  1. Rural villagers
  2. Rural middle class
  3. Urban middle class
Facilitator Guide

- 4. Upper end rich people
- Tell the participants that they have to design a marketing strategy keeping the 4Ps of Marketing in mind.
- Give the participants 20 minutes to discuss and come up with their strategy.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit

**Activity De-brief**
- Ask each group to come forward and give a brief presentation.
- Ask each group what they kept in mind while designing their marketing strategy.
- Encourage other groups to be interactive and ask questions.

**Say**
- Each entrepreneur has an idea of wants he wants to sell. It may be a service or a product.
- Discuss “Importance of an IDEA” as given in the Participant Handbook.

**Summarize**
- Summarize the key points of the unit.
- Ask the participants what they learnt from the activities.
- Encourage them to ask if they have any doubts.
9.6.2: Business Entity Concepts

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Recall basic business terminology

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook

Say
• Let’s recall some basic business terminology.
• Discuss the Business Entity Concepts as given in the Participant Handbook.
• Let’s learn some basic business terminology by having an activity.
• We will have a quiz today.

Activity
• The activity is a quiz.

Do
• Divide the class in two groups and give a name to each group.
• Explain the rules of the quiz. For each correct answer the group gets 1 mark.
• If the group is unable to answer the question is passed to the next group.
• Explain the purpose and duration of the activity.
• Ask the questions of the quiz.
• Keep a score of the groups.
• Set guidelines pertaining to discipline and expected tasks.

Summarize
• Summarize the unit by discussing the key points.

Notes for Facilitation
QUESTIONS FOR THE QUIZ
1. What does B2B mean?
   Business to business
2. What is a financial report?
   A comprehensive account of a business’ transactions and expenses
3. Who is a sales prospect?
   A potential customer
4. How is working capital calculated?
   Current assets minus current liabilities
QUESTIONS FOR THE QUIZ

1. What does B2B mean?
   *Business to business*

2. What is a financial report?
   *A comprehensive account of a business’ transactions and expenses*

3. Who is a sales prospect?
   *A potential customer*

4. How is working capital calculated?
   *Current assets minus current liabilities*

5. What is an estimation of the overall worth of a business called?
   *Valuation*

6. You are buying a house. What type of transaction is it?
   *Complex transaction*

7. How will you calculate the net income?
   *Revenue minus expenses*

8. How is Return on Investment expressed?
   *As percentage*

9. How will you calculate the cost of goods sold?
   *Cost of materials minus cost of outputs*

10. What is revenue?
    *Total amount of income before expenses are subtracted.*

11. What is a Break-Even Point?
9.6.3: CRM & Networking

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

 Discuss the need for CRM
 Discuss the benefits of CRM
 Discuss the need for networking
 Discuss the benefits of networking

Resources to be Used

 Participant Handbook

Ask

 Can your business run without customers/buyers?
 Who is the most important entity in any business?

Say

 The key to every success business lies on understanding the customer's expectations and providing excellent customer service.
 Discuss about CRM and its benefits. Refer to the Participant Handbook.
 Providing excellent customer service entails:
   Treating your customers with respect.
   Be available as per their need/schedule.
   Handling complaints effectively.
   Building long lasting relationships.
   Collecting regular feedback.
 Handle customer complaints proactively. Ask “what happened”, “why it happened”, “how can it be avoided next time”, etc.
 Collecting feedback from the customers regularly will enable you to improve your good/service.
 “Let’s understand it better with the help of some case scenarios. You will be given some cases within your groups. You have to analyse the case scenario that has been given to you and then find an appropriate solution to the problem.”

Do

 Divide the class into four groups of maximum six participants depending on the batch size.
 Give one case study to each group.
 Instruct them to read the case carefully.
 The group is expected to analyse and discuss the case amongst them and find a solution to the given problem.
 Put down the discussion points (de-brief questions) on the board. Give the class 5-10 minutes to discuss the case and note down their solutions.
 At the end of 10 minutes, the team should present their case solution to the class.
Team Activity

Case Study Analysis
Raju runs a business of wooden furniture. He has a huge list of customers on Facebook and WhatsApp who give him orders regularly. Ankita is one of his old and regular customers. She placed an order for a new chester and TV cabinet via WhatsApp and requested Raju to send them as soon as possible. When the parcel reached Ankita through courier she found that chester was broken and the TV unit was chipped from the bottom. Ankita was heartbroken. It was a complete waste of money. She sent a message to Raju on WhatsApp, expressing her anger and disappointment. Raju might lose an old customer forever if he doesn't satisfy the customer. What should Raju do to retain his customer?

Scenario 2
Rajni runs a boutique shop. She sells suits and sarees. She is one of the most successful designer in her city. Rajni swears that all the clothes in her boutique have unique designs. Smita has to attend her cousin's wedding; she goes to Rajni’s boutique to buy a saree. Smita wanted a unique designer saree. Rajni customized a saree for her and sent it over the courier. When Smita had a look at the saree she realised her two friends had the same design sarees. She sent a message to Rajni on WhatsApp, expressing her anger and disappointment. Did Rajni make a false promise? Were her designs copied? What could happen to Rajni’s image after this incident? What would you do if you were in Rajni’s place?

Scenario 3
Shama is a beautician who offers parlour services to ladies by making home visits. Recently, Shama got her name registered on an e-commerce website. Two days earlier, she got a message from Mrs Sushma. The appointment was fixed for next day, 11:00 am and the remuneration for the services was decided beforehand. When Shama reached there at 10:50 am, Mrs Sushma was not at home. When Shama called her, she asked her to wait for a while. Mrs Sushma reached home at 11:45 am. Meanwhile, Shama had to reschedule her next appointment. After availing Shama’s services, Mrs Sushma refused to pay the requisite amount and started finding faults in the services provided by her. Who was at fault in this scenario? What should you do in case the customer behaves unreasonably? What would you do if you were in Shama’s place?

Scenario 4
Shailender is the manager of a car showroom. He proactively takes part in all the transactions that happen in his showroom. Vinita wants to buy a new car. She has chosen a car from Shailender’s showroom. The salesperson has given her a very good discount and has also promised free service for one year. Vinita goes to the showroom and asks to complete all the formalities to purchase the car. When she sees the final bill she realize that she has not received the promised discount neither was there any mention of the free services. She immediately demands to see the Shailender. When Shailender’s head asks how much discount Vinita was promised, he realised the discount will make the sale in loss. The car showroom owner might lose a customer and deal due to false commitments made by his manager. Besides, the customer might tell this to other people, creating a bad name and image for the showroom. If you owned that showroom, how would you have convinced your customer?

Say

• Now, let’s discuss the problem and solution with the class.
• The group will first briefly describe the case to the class.
• Then discuss the issue identified and the proposed solution.
• Present the solution as a role play.
• Post presentation, the other groups may ask questions from the group that has presented.
Do

- Congratulate each group for the presentation/role play.
- Ask the audience to applaud for them.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up the discussion quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Say

- If your customers are happy with you they will give referrals which will help to grow your business.
- One more way of growing business is 'Networking'.
- Discuss Networking and its benefits. Refer to the Participant Handbook.

Activity

Group Discussion

- Conduct a group discussion in the class on how they can do networking for their business.

Summarize

- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
- Close the discussion by summarizing the importance of CRM and Networking for entrepreneurs.
- Close the discussion by summarizing the importance of CRM and Networking for entrepreneurs.
9.6.4: Business Plan: Why Set Goals?

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
• Discuss the importance of setting goals
• Differentiate between short-term, medium-term and long-term goals
• Discuss how to write a business plan
• Explain the financial planning process
• Discuss ways to manage your risk

Resources to be Used
• Participant Handbook
• Chart papers
• Blank papers
• Marker pens
• Ruler

Ask
• Remember we had written SMART Goals in a previous session? Let’s try and recall why it is important to set goals?
• While framing SMART goals, we talked about ‘T’ in SMART, which was ‘Time Bound’? What do we mean by time bound goals?
• What time limit did you set for your goal- 3 weeks, 3 years, 10 years?

Say
• Talk about short term, long term and medium term goals, as discussed in the Participant Handbook.

Ask
• As you are planning to become an entrepreneur, you must have thought of an idea for a start-up. What is your business idea?

Do
• Ask few participants to share their business ideas.

Ask
• Have you created a business plan for your business idea?
• Do you think it is important to have a business plan in place? Why/ why not?

Say
• Talk about ‘Why Create a Business Plan’ as discussed in the Participant Handbook.
• Let’s understand it better with the help of an activity.
Team Activity

Writing a business Plan

- This is a group activity.
- Give the groups the required resources such as chart paper and markers.
- This activity is divided into two parts:
  1. Create a business idea
  2. Develop a business plan
- The group will discuss and come up with a new business idea and present their idea to the class.
- In the second part of the activity the group will develop a business plan for the business idea.
- The business plan prepared will be presented by the groups to the class.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MY BUSINESS PLAN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Executive Summary: What is your Mission Statement?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Business Description: What is the nature of your business?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Market Analysis: What is your target market?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organization and Management: What is your company’s organizational structure?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service or Product Line: What is the lifecycle of your product/service?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marketing and Sales: How will you advertise and sell your products?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Funding Request: How much fund is required and from where?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Say

- Teams will need to brainstorm for this part of the activity.
- Use the blank papers for the second part of this activity.
- Make your business plan on a chart paper based on the following parameters:
  1. Executive Summary
  2. Business Description
  3. Market Analysis
  4. Organization and Management
  5. Service or Product Line
  6. Marketing and Sales
- Explain each parameter in detail as done in the Participant Handbook.
- Discuss each parameter with the business idea examples of the groups.
- Groups will discuss and develop the business plan for their business idea.
Facilitator Guide

Say

- Now, let's share our plan with the class.
- Each group will briefly describe the plan to the class.
- Post presentation, the other groups may ask questions to the group who have presented their plan.

Do

- Congratulate each group for sharing their points.
- Ask the audience to applaud for them.
- Keep a check on time. Tell group to wind up the discussion quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

Say

- Along with a business plan, you need to create a financial plan and evaluate the risk involved with your start up.

Summarize

- Ask the participants what they have learnt from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.

Notes for Facilitation

- Keep the business plan format ready in a flipchart to display it during the activity.
9.6.5: Procedures and Formalities for Bank Finance

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Describe the procedure and formalities for applying for bank finance

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook
- Bank loan/finance form sample

Ask

- While preparing a business plan in the last session, we discussed financial planning to arrange financial resources for your start-up. Therefore, how will you collect funds to start your business?

Say

- While most entrepreneurs think 'product' is the most difficult thing to decide for a business, start-up capital poses an even a bigger obstacle. Though there are various ways of funding the business, to convince investors to invest money is the most challenging.

- Some of the funding options available in India are:
  - **Bootstrapping**: Also called self-financing is the easiest way of financing
  - **Crowd funding**: Funds are collected by consumers pre-ordering or donating for starting the business.
  - **Angel investors**: Individual or group of investors investing in the company
  - **Venture capitalists**: Venture capitals are professionally managed funds who invest in companies that have huge potential. They usually invest in a business against equity.
  - **Bank loans**: The most popular method in India.
  - **Microfinance Providers or NBFCs**
  - **Government programmes**

- Let us know discuss the most popular method i.e. bank finance in detail here.

Do

- Discuss the list of documents that are required to apply for a loan like letter of introduction, business brochure, references of other banks, and financial statements.
- Explain the details to be filled in a loan application form.
- Divide the class into groups. Give each group a loan application form.
- Ask the groups to discuss and fill the form.

Summarize

- Close the discussion by summarizing the important documents needed for bank loan.
- Ask the participants if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
## Checklist of Documents to Be Submitted Along With Loan Application (Common for all banks)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Audited financial statements of the business concern for the last three years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Provisional financial statements for the half-year ended on ____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Audited financial statements of associate concern/s for the last three years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Copy of QIS II for the previous quarter ended on ________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Operational details in Annexure I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>CMA data for the last three years, estimates for current year and projection for the next year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Term loan/DPG requirements in Annexure II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>List of machinery in respect of machinery offered as security in Annexure III</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>Additional details for export advances furnished in Annexure IV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>Property statements of all directors/partners/proprietor/guarantors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>Copies of ITAO of the company for the last three years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>Copies of ITAOs/WTAOs of the directors/partners/proprietor and guarantors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>Copies of certificate from banks and financial institutions certifying the latest liability with them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>Copy of board resolution authorizing the company to apply to your bank for the credit facilities mentioned in application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>Copy of memorandum and article of association (in case of limited company)/partnership deed (in case of partnership firm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>Cash budget for the current year and next year in case of contractors and seasonal industries</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9.6.6: Enterprise Management – An Overview: How to Manage Your Enterprise?

Unit Objectives

At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:

- Discuss how to manage their own enterprise

Resources to be Used

- Participant Handbook

Ask

- Having set-up a business, do you think it is possible to do everything on your own?
- Does one require trained persons for help?
- What does management mean?

Say

- Let’s have a look at this example:
  Kapil had a small business that was beginning to pick up pace. He wanted to expand his business, and therefore employed few more people. One day, as he was walking past Ramesh, one of his new employees, he overheard Ramesh talking rudely to a customer on the phone. This set him thinking. Kapil realised that he should have regular team meetings to motivate his employees and speak with them about any problems they might be facing during work. He should also conduct training sessions on new practices, soft skills, and technology, and develop work ethics manual for managing his enterprise.

Say

- Was Kapil correct in his approach or he should have scolded Ramesh instantly in front of his other employees?
- Discuss “Enterprise Management – An Overview” with the participants as given in the Participant Handbook.

Say

- Let’s learn how to effectively manage an enterprise or business through an activity.

Team Activity

Enterprise Management

- This is a group activity.
- Design a matrix listing the topics and key words that are needed to run an enterprise effectively and smoothly.

Activity De-brief

- Have each group present their matrix.
- Encourage participants of the other groups to ask question about each other’s presentation.
**Do**

- Instruct the participants that this is group work.
- Divide the class into small groups of 4.
- Give each group a chart paper and coloured pen.
- Tell the participants that they have to make a matrix they need to fill.
- They have to write the main topics and key words that will help them effectively manage their enterprise.
- Give the participants 15 minutes to discuss and write.
- Keep a check on time. Tell the group to wind up quickly if they go beyond the given time limit.

**Summarize**

- Ask the participants what they have learned from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
- Close the discussion by summarizing the importance of effective management to run an enterprise as given in the Participant Handbook.
9.6.7: 20 Questions to Ask Yourself before Considering Entrepreneurship

Unit Objectives
At the end of this unit, participants will be able to:
- List the important questions that every entrepreneur should ask before starting an enterprise

Resources to be Used
- Participant Handbook
- Blank sheets of paper
- Pens

Ask
- Why do you want to become an entrepreneur?

Say
- It is very important to know why you want to become an entrepreneur. Your personal goals for becoming an entrepreneur play a key role in the success of your business. Your goals should be clear well before you start your business.
- Apart from the goals, the other aspects of business that you need to bear in mind are the potential problems that you may face to set-up, your areas of interest, and all the other dimensions of the business.
- Let’s understand it better with the help of some questions that every entrepreneur should ask before starting their own business.
- Open the Participant Handbook section named ‘20 Questions to Ask Yourself Before Considering Entrepreneurship’. You have to answer the questions individually.
- Then, we will have a class discussion on all the questions.

Do
- Read out the questions one by one in front of all the participants.
- Participants have to answer all the one by one questions.
- Give the class 10-15 minutes to note down their answers.
- At the end of 15 minutes, open the discussion for all the questions.
- Moderate the discussion by focusing on the relevant points.
- Keep a check on time and don’t let the discussion get sabotaged or lose track of time. Ensure all the questions are covered and discussed.

Summarize
- Ask the participants what they have learned from this exercise/activity.
- Ask if they have any questions related to what they have talked about so far.
10. Annexures

Annexure I – Training Delivery Plan
Annexure II – Assessment Criteria
# Annexure I

## Training Delivery Plan

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Program Name:</th>
<th>Goldsmith: Component Maker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Qualification Pack Name &amp; Ref. ID</td>
<td>G&amp;J/Q0603, v1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version No.</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version Update Date</td>
<td>N.A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites to Training (if any)</td>
<td>Preferably 10th standard Passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Training Outcomes</strong></td>
<td>By the end of this program, the participants will be able to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1. <strong>Draw wire or strip from precious metal or alloy bar</strong>: Draw wire/strip from gold bar in required thickness/width which is a critical part in making all categories of jewellery and connecting components.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. <strong>Make ball from precious metal or alloy</strong>: Make sheets from gold bar of required gauge to cut them into strips to make balls of specific diameters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. <strong>Stamp a gold sheet</strong>: Draw sheets from gold bar of required gauge to stamp with it dies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. <strong>Make gold chain</strong>: Draw wire from gold bar and use them to make chains.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. <strong>Maintain IPR and respect copyright</strong>: Respecting intellectual property rights of company’s products and designs to avoid infringement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. <strong>Coordinate with others</strong>: Encouraging artisan to work as a team and multitask and communicate with colleagues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. <strong>Maintain health and safety at workplace</strong>: Familiarising artisan towards potential hazards in order to make work environment safe for everyone.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sl. No</th>
<th>Module Name</th>
<th>Session Name</th>
<th>Session Objectives</th>
<th>NOS Reference</th>
<th>Methodology</th>
<th>Training Tools/Aids</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1      | Introduction | Icebreaker   | ✌ Introduce each other  
✌ Build rapport with fellow students and the trainer  
✌ Induce students to take part in group activities  
✌ Create team building exercises for upcoming modules | NA | ✌ Interactive session | ✌ Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens, loose blank paper sheets, permanent marker, safety pins, scissors, 30 blank paper sheets 4 x 2 inches | 0.50 hour |

---
| 2 | Introduction | Gem and Jewellery Sector in India | Understand the students level of knowledge and skill |
|   |             |                                | Familiarize themselves with the Gem and Jewellery industry of India |
|   |             |                                | Endorse the huge significance of the Gem and Jewellery industry on India’s export market |
|   |             |                                | Discuss the market segments for various types of products manufactured by this industry |
|   |             |                                | Create awareness of the involvement of this industry in the growth of the India |
|   |             |                                | Identify the growth pattern of this industry |
|   |             |                                | Discuss about the career growth in this industry |
|   |             |                                | NA |
|   |             | Powerpoint presentation |                                 |
|   |             | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens | Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector |
|   |             | 0.7 hour |

| 3 | Introduction | Objectives of the Program | Explain the jewellery manufacturing process to other students or work colleagues |
|   |             |                                | Explain the need for component making in the jewellery manufacturing process |
|   |             |                                | Apply procedures to draw wire or strip from bars of precious metal or alloy |
|   |             |                                | Apply procedures to make balls from precious metal or alloy |
|   |             |                                | Apply procedures for stamping patterns on gold or its alloy |
|   |             | NA |
|   |             | Facilitator led discussion |
|   |             | Interactive session |
|   |             | 0.5 hour |

<p>|   |             | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens |
|   |             | Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Introduci on</th>
<th>Where Does Goldsmith - Component Maker Fall in the Jewellery Making Process</th>
<th>Deliberate about where component making comes in the jewellery casting process</th>
<th>Explain the overview of the jewellery manufacturing process to other students or colleagues</th>
<th>Differentiate between casted jewellery and handmade jewellery manufacturing process</th>
<th>NA</th>
<th>Facilitator led discussion, Interactive session, Powerpoint presentation</th>
<th>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens, Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector</th>
<th>1.00 hour</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>Job Opportunities of a Goldsmith - Component Maker</td>
<td>Discuss about the job scope of a Goldsmith – Component Maker</td>
<td>Refer to the different workplaces a component maker can be employed in or can work in</td>
<td>Interact with different organizations about the type of workplace</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion, Interactive session</td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens, Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector</td>
<td>1.00 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>Introduction to Jewellery Making Process</td>
<td>Explain the jewellery manufacturing processes to colleagues</td>
<td>Explain how metal is melted and processed into metal bars</td>
<td>Describe the handmade jewellery manufacturing process</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - KA2, G&amp;J/N0602 - KA2, G&amp;J/N0603 - KA2, G&amp;J/N0604 - KA2</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation, Facilitator led discussion, Field Visit - Factory</td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens, Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector</td>
<td>6.00 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 7 | Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy | Job Work of a Goldsmith – Component Maker | **G&J/N0601** - KA3, SB14  
**G&J/N0602** - KA3, SB10  
**G&J/N0603** - KA3, SB10 | **Powerpoint presentation**,  
**Facilitator led discussion** | **Whiteboard**,  
**whiteboard markers**,  
**notepads**,  
**pens**  
**Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector** | 4.0 hours |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy | Introduction to Metals | **G&J/N0601** - KA1, KB3, KB4  
**G&J/N0602** - KA1, SB2, SB3  
**G&J/N0603** - PC2, KA1, KB2, KB3  
**G&J/N0604** - KA1, KB1, KB2 | **Powerpoint presentation**,  
**Facilitator led discussion**  
**Demonstration – Properties of metal, gold reaction to acid**  
**Exercise – Colour difference in gold karatage, chemical compounds of gold, silver oxidization, difference between platinum vs gold and silver** | **Whiteboard**,  
**whiteboard markers**,  
**notepads**,  
**pens**  
**Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector**  
**Blank job sheets**  
**Gold, silver and platinum nuggets, bars, wires, rods**  
**Gold alloys (12k, 18k, 22k)** | 8.0 hours |
<p>| | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy</td>
<td>Metal Alloys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the meaning and importance of alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify the uses of alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Anneal and cool alloys and metal as per required procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify the different gold alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prepare gold alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Increase of decrease gold karat as per design requirements using the required formulas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify the silver alloys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - KA1, KB3, KB4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0602 - KA1, SB2, SB3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0603 - PC2, KA1, KB2, KB3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0604 - KA1, KB1, KB2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstration – weighing scale, materials and tools for melting metal, annealing and cooling,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Team activity – annealing and cooling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Exercise – gold alloys and effect on colour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Practical – make gold alloy, make silver alloy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blank sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Gold, silver and platinum alloys as available in the market</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>34.00 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Oxidized silver jewellery
- Platinum jewellery
- Iron hammer, iron rod, steel spoon, thin thread, rubber band, piece of wood, printing paper, bowl of water, 2 ceramic plates, pebble rock, pencil, ice cubes, match box with match sticks, candle
- Aqua Regia
- Gold, silver and platinum alloys as available in the market
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Identify the platinum alloys</th>
<th>Pure gold, pure silver, pure platinum (as per available in the market)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Copper, zinc, palladium, rhodium</td>
<td>Calculators</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighing scale for metals (up to 1kg calibration)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metal melting crucible, furnace, tongs, gloves, face mask, oil, tweezers, picking tongs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Borax, flux, boric acid, metal cleaning alcohol</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbon stirring rod</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moulds for metal bars and rods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cloth attached to a wooden handle dipped in oil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceramic bowl with either cool water, water with...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy</td>
<td>Types of Jewellery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy</td>
<td>Types of Settings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Identify the different types of components or findings used in jewellery making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Identify the best manufacturing process or method to make components</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Recognize the use of each finding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the importance of a component and its significance in jewellery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Rolling mill (dual purpose), wire drawing machine, draw plates, gauges, mandrels or sticks, pliers, magnifying lens, dapping punch set,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>Material/Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal</td>
<td>Metal stamping tool set, files, saw frames with saw blades, hammers, bench pin,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sandpaper or polishing paper and sticks, flex shaft, wire cutter, callipers or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>measuring gauges, ring clamp, metal rulers, scribes, compass, dividers, drilling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tools, coiling tool, metal wire, cup bur tools, tweezers, bending blocks or swage,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>flame torch, ceramic bowl with water</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Copper rods – 3 per student</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blank sheets of paper</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14. Annotate and cool the metal to avoid breakage

14. Handle the rolling mill

G&J/N0601 - PC1, KB1, KB4, SA2, SA3, SB1

14. Powerpoint presentation

Facilitator led discussion

Whiteboard, whiteboard markers,

13. 00 hours
<p>| Component Maker | 15 Draw Wire or Strip from Bars of Precious Metal or Alloy | Making Sheets from Precious Metal | 1 Annoal and cool the metal to avoid breakage 1 Handle the rolling mill 1 Make sheets from precious metal 1 Make different sizes of metal 1 Use the appropriate tools and equipment for making metal sheets | G&amp;J/N0601 - SB1, SB5 G&amp;J/N0602 - PC1, SB1, SB3, SA2, SA4, SB7 G&amp;J/N0603 - PC1, PC2, KB1, KB2, KB3, SA2, SA7 G&amp;J/N0604 - PC1, KB6, KB2, SA2, SA3, KB7 | 1 Practical – Draw wire, anneal and cool wire, file 1 LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop 1 Rolling mill – Dual purpose, draw bench or draw plates, metal rods, pliers or tongs to pull wire, gloves, cloth, beeswax or grease, hammer, files 1 Blank sheets of paper | Powerpoint presentation 1 Facilitator led discussion 1 Demonstration and practical – using rolling mill, making specified thickness sheet, filing of sheet, rolling of sheet for machine made chains | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens | 7.00 hours |
| 16 Make Balls from Precious | Make the Balls or Beads | 1 Create precious metal balls 1 Create precious metal beads | G&amp;J/N0602 - PC1, SB1, SB2, SB3, SA1, SB7 | Powerpoint presentation 1 Facilitator led discussion | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens | LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop | Rolling mill, metal rod, files set, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water, sandpaper | Blank sheets of paper | 20.00 hours |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metal or Alloy</th>
<th>Identify the appropriate tools and equipment for creating precious metal balls and beads</th>
<th>Demonstration and practical – cutting sheet for shape, shaping, creating half spheres, soldering, creating solid beads</th>
<th>notepads, pens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstration and practical – cutting sheet for shape, shaping, creating half spheres, soldering, creating solid beads</td>
<td>Demonstration and practical – cutting sheet for shape, shaping, creating half spheres, soldering, creating solid beads</td>
<td>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Metal sheets, saw frame with blades, metal shape cutter having different shapes and different sizes, dapping punch set, soldering alloy sheet and wire, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate, soldering block, soldering block with holes, tweezers</td>
<td>Metal sheets, saw frame with blades, metal shape cutter having different shapes and different sizes, dapping punch set, soldering alloy sheet and wire, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate, soldering block, soldering block with holes, tweezers</td>
<td>Metal sheets, saw frame with blades, metal shape cutter having different shapes and different sizes, dapping punch set, soldering alloy sheet and wire, flame torch, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution with sodium bisulphate, soldering block, soldering block with holes, tweezers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blank sheets of paper</td>
<td>Blank sheets of paper</td>
<td>Blank sheets of paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Make Balls from Precious Metal or Alloy</td>
<td>File the Ball Segments</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>File the ball segments</td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Clean the ball segments</td>
<td>Demonstration and practical – file, clean, buff, polish ball segments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Buff the ball segments</td>
<td>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Polish the ball segments</td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>4.00 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Component Maker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Make Balls from Precious Metal or Alloy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bead Making Machines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Understand the working mechanism of bead making machines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image2.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Operate the bead making machines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image3.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Detect any faulty mechanism while checking the beads</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Powerpoint presentation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image5.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Facilitator led discussion</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image6.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Field visit to factory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bead making machines</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blank sheets of paper</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6.00 hours</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component Maker</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stamp Patterns on Gold or Its Alloy</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stamp the Gold Sheet</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image8.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Stamp the metal sheet using the appropriate tools and equipment</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image9.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Cut various metal shapes using the metal shape cutter tool</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image10.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Stamp metal manually</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image11.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Stamp metal shapes using the die striking machine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image12.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Use die stamps with the die striking machine</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image13.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Powerpoint presentation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image14.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Facilitator led discussion</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image15.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Activity – Tools</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image16.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Practical – Stamping</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image17.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Field Visit – Die Strike Manufacturing unit</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image18.jpg" alt="Image" /> <strong>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Metal sheets, manual stamping tool kit, die stamps, silver coins, gold coins</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>16.00 hours</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 20   | Stamp Patterns on Gold or Its Alloy | - File the stamped metal piece as per design requirements  
- Create different textures on the metal  
- Create different finishes on the metal  
- File out extra metal  
- File out extra solder  
- Shape the metal as per design requirements  
- Detect defects  
- Report metal defects to supervisor | G&J/N0603 - PC1, PC2, PC3, KB1, KB3, SA1, SA3, SA4, SB7 | 8.0 hours |

| 21   | Make Chain from Gold Bar | - Differentiate between handmade and machine made chains  
- Identify the pre- and post-processes of machine made chains  
- Implement the chain lengths as per design requirements | G&J/N0604 - PC1, PC2, PC3, KB1, KB2, KB3, SA1, SA3, SA4, SB7 | 24.0 hours |

- Powerpoint presentation  
- Facilitator led discussion  
- Practical – clasp joining, handmade chain  
- Field visit – Chain making factory | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens  
- LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop  
- Stamped metal sheets, file set, bench pin, work bench, texture hammer set  
- Blank sheets of paper |
| Identify the correct terms for different chain designs |
| Compare the cost of handmade and machine made chains |
| Choose the right type of clasp for joining the chain together |
| Create handmade chains |

<p>| Chain making machines, plier set, file set, metal wires, metal sheets, bending blocks or swage, metal nuggets, metal alloys, different types of clasps, steel scale (maximum length of 20 inches), bench pin, work bench, flame torch, solder alloys, ceramic bowl with water or water with de-saturated alcohol or pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, different types of |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>22</th>
<th>Make Chain from Gold Bar</th>
<th>File the Chain Components</th>
<th>G&amp;J/N0604 - PC1, PC2, PC3, KB2, KB3, SA1, SA3, SA4, SB7</th>
<th>Chain designs, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board</th>
<th>Blank sheets of paper</th>
<th>G&amp;J/N0604 - Powerpoint presentation</th>
<th>Facilitator led discussion</th>
<th>Practical – file chain</th>
<th>4.0 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Make Chain from Gold Bar</td>
<td>File the Chain Components</td>
<td>Create different textures and finishes on handmade chains</td>
<td>Create different textures and finishes on machine made chains</td>
<td>Identify defects during filing</td>
<td>Repair defects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Make Chain from Gold Bar</td>
<td>Detecting Product Defects</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
<td>LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop</td>
<td>Metal rods, metal wires, metal sheets, metal balls, metal half spheres, metal beads, handmade chains, machine made chains, plier set, file set, metal wires, steel</td>
<td>8.0 hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify defects in metal wire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify defects in components</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify the reasons for defect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Repair defects</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Report defects that are not repairable to supervisor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

pickle solution of sodium bisulphate, tweezers, adjustable stand for height with holder attachment, buffing machine, polishing tool set, soldering board

Blank sheets of paper
| 24 | Make Chain from Gold Bar | Reading the Job Sheet | G&J/N0601 - SA1, SA2, SA4  
G&J/N0602 - PC1, PC2, SA1, SA2, SA4  
G&J/N0603 - PC3, PC4, SA1, SA2, SA4  
G&J/N0604 - PC2, PC3, SA1, SA2 | Powerpoint presentation  
Facilitator led discussion  
Exercise – fill job sheet, job sheet check | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens  
LCD Projector attached to computer or laptop |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page 25</th>
<th>Make Chain from Gold Bar</th>
<th>Controlling Gold Loss</th>
<th>2.0 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Control metal loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Identify the areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>where metal loss can</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>take place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Use the appropriate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>tools and machines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>to recover metal loss</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - PC2, KA1,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB7, SB8, SB9, SB10,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB11, SB12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0602 - PC3, KA1,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB1, SB2, SB3, SB4,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB5, SB6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0603 - PC4, KA1,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB1, SB2, SB3, SB4,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB5, SB6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0604 - PC3, KA1,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powerpoint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>presentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitator led</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>discussion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>markers, notepads,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LCD Projector</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>attached to computer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or laptop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blank job sheets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Work bench, dust</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>collector, bench</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>brush, water bucket,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fine size sieve</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page 26</th>
<th>Make Chain from Gold Bar</th>
<th>Achieving Quality Standards</th>
<th>2.0 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Differentiate between</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Quality Control, Quality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Assurance and Quality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Standards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Achieve the quality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>standards of their</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>organization and aim higher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - PC1, SA1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0602 - PC4, SA4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0603 - PC6, SA4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0604 - PC4, PC5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>markers, notepads, pens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computer or Laptop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>attached to LCD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>projector</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blank sheets</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page 27</th>
<th>Make Chain from Gold Bar</th>
<th>Maintaining Quality of Production</th>
<th>2.0 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Know their organization’s policy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>on quality of production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Maintain quality of production</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by detecting defects at an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>early stage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - PC4, PC6,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB11, SB15</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0602 - PC4, PC6,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0603 - PC4, PC8,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>SB5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0604 -</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Team activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>markers, notepads, pens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Computer or Laptop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>attached to</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Component Maker

Not for Sale- For Internal Circulation only
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Session</th>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Objectives</th>
<th>Materials</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Make Chain from Gold Bar</td>
<td>Know Your Organization and Its Standards</td>
<td>- Understand their organizations goals and mission&lt;br&gt;- Know their skills, company products and company quality standards</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - PC4, KA1&lt;br&gt;G&amp;J/N0602 - KA1&lt;br&gt;G&amp;J/N0603 - KA1&lt;br&gt;G&amp;J/N0604 - KA1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Make Chain from Gold Bar</td>
<td>Work Hazards</td>
<td>- Identify the hazards in their work area&lt;br&gt;- Provide potential solutions to the hazard</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N0601 - PC5, KB5, SB16&lt;br&gt;G&amp;J/N0602 - PC5, SB4, SB8, SB12&lt;br&gt;G&amp;J/N0603 - PC7, KB4, SB8, SB12&lt;br&gt;G&amp;J/N0604 - PC6, KB3, SB2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Maintain IPR and Respect Copyright</td>
<td>Scope of IPR</td>
<td>- Protect the company’s IPR&lt;br&gt;- Explain the importance of IPR to colleagues</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9910 PC1, PC2, PC3, KA1, KA2, KA3, KA4, KB1, KB2, SA1, SB1, SB2, SB3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Maintain IPR and Respect Copyright</td>
<td>Types of IPR</td>
<td>- Discuss the role IPR plays in a company&lt;br&gt;- Identify areas which are confidential</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9910 PC1, PC2, PC3, KA1, KA2, KA3, KA4, KB1, KB2, SA1, SB1, SB2, SB3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Coordinating with Others</td>
<td>Importance of Interaction and Coordination</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9912 KA1, KA2, KA3, KA4, KB1, KB2, SA1, SA2, SB1, SB2, SB3, SB4</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Coordinating with Others</td>
<td>Importance of Interaction and Coordination</td>
<td>Know the importance of interaction and coordination</td>
<td>Identify gap areas in their interaction and coordination with co-workers, supervisor and others</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Coordinate with Others</td>
<td>Interacting with Supervisor</td>
<td>Know the importance of interaction with their supervisor</td>
<td>Identify gap areas in their interaction and coordination with their supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Coordinate with Others</td>
<td>Interacting with Colleagues and Other Departments</td>
<td>Know the importance of interaction with colleagues and other departments</td>
<td>Identify gap areas in their interaction and coordination with colleagues and other departments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Maintain Health and Safety</td>
<td>Understand potential</td>
<td>Identify the potential sources of</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9914 PC1, PC2, PC3, KA1,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Activity</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Source</td>
<td>Materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Maintain Health and Safety at Workplace</td>
<td>Understand Safety Signs and Appropriate Requirements to be Safe</td>
<td>KB1, KB2, SB3, SB4</td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Field visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Maintain Health and Safety at Workplace</td>
<td>Understand ergonomics or bad posture of body</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9914 PC1, PC2, PC3, KA1, KB1</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Field visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Blank sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Various safety signs used in factories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Maintain Health and Safety at Workplace</td>
<td>Fire Safety Rules</td>
<td>ergonomics and its effects on their health</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9914 PC1, PC2, PC3, KA1, KB3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Maintain Health and Safety at Workplace</td>
<td>Understand How to Deal with Emergency Situations</td>
<td>Identify the different types of fire Identify the causes of fire Identify right type of fire extinguisher and use it on different types of fire Read if the fire extinguisher is refilled or not Understand basic firefighting concepts Know what to do if they are trapped in a fire situation</td>
<td>G&amp;J/N9914 PC1, PC2, PC3, KA1, SB2, SB5, SB6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Employability &amp; Entrepreneurship Skills</td>
<td>Personal Strengths &amp; Value Systems</td>
<td>Explain the meaning of health List common health issues Discuss tips to prevent common health issues Explain the meaning of hygiene Understand the purpose of Swach Bharat Abhiyan</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Explain the meaning of habit
Discuss ways to set up a safe work environment
Discuss critical safety habits to be followed by employees
Explain the importance of self-analysis
Understand motivation with the help of Maslow’s Hierarchy of Needs
Discuss the meaning of achievement motivation
List the characteristics of entrepreneurs with achievement motivation
List the different factors that motivate them
Discuss how to maintain a positive attitude
Discuss the role of attitude in self-analysis
List their strengths and weaknesses
Discuss the qualities of honest people
Describe the importance of honesty in entrepreneurs
Discuss the elements of a strong work ethic
Discuss how to foster a good work ethic
List the characteristics of highly creative and innovative people
| 41 | Employability & Entrepreneurship Skills | Digital Literacy: A Recap | NA | Powerpoint presentation  
Facilitator led discussion  
Demonstrate – Basics of computers  
Activity – E-Commerce | Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens  
Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector  
Blank sheets  
Computers, laptops, keyboards, mouse, printer, speakers, MS office installed on computer desktops or laptops per student |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Discuss the benefits of time management  
List the traits of effective time managers  
Describe effective time management technique  
Discuss the importance of anger management  
Describe anger management strategies  
Discuss tips for anger management  
Discuss the causes and symptoms of stress  
Discuss tips for stress management | Identify the basic parts of a computer  
Identify the basic parts of a keyboard  
Recall basic computer terminology  
Recall basic computer terminology  
Recall the functions of basic computer keys  
Discuss the main applications of MS Office  
Discuss the benefits of Microsoft Outlook  
Discuss the different types of e-commerce  
List the benefits of e-commerce for retailers and customers  
Discuss how the Digital India campaign will help boost e-commerce in India | 8.00 hours |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>42</th>
<th>Employability &amp; Entrepreneurship Skills</th>
<th>Money Matters</th>
<th>NA</th>
<th>5.00 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Describe how you will sell a product or service on an e-commerce platform</td>
<td>Discuss the importance of saving money</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the benefits of saving money</td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
<td>Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the main types of bank accounts</td>
<td>Differentiate between fixed and variable costs</td>
<td>Blank sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Describe the process of opening a bank account</td>
<td>Describe the main types of investment options</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Differentiate between fixed and variable costs</td>
<td>Describe the different types of insurance products</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Describe the main types of investment options</td>
<td>Describe the different types of insurance products</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the uses of online banking</td>
<td>Discuss the different types of taxes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the main types of electronic funds transfers</td>
<td>Discuss how to answer the most frequently asked interview questions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>43</th>
<th>Employability &amp; Entrepreneurship Skills</th>
<th>Preparing for Employment &amp; Self Employment</th>
<th>NA</th>
<th>5.00 hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the steps to prepare for an interview</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
<td>Whiteboard, whiteboard markers, notepads, pens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the steps to create an effective Resume</td>
<td>Facilitator led discussion</td>
<td>Computer or Laptop attached to LCD projector</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the most frequently asked interview questions</td>
<td>Role play – Interview</td>
<td>Blank sheets</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss how to answer the most frequently asked interview questions</td>
<td>Activity – Resume writing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss basic workplace terminology</td>
<td>Team activity – Interview FAQs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Employability &amp; Entrepreneurship Skills</td>
<td>Understanding Entrepreneurship</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the concept of entrepreneurship</td>
<td>Discuss the importance of entrepreneurship</td>
<td>Describe the characteristics of an entrepreneur</td>
<td>Describe the different types of enterprises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Employability &amp; Entrepreneurship Skills</td>
<td>Preparing to be an Entrepreneur</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Powerpoint presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the meaning of entrepreneur</td>
<td>Describe the different types of entrepreneurs</td>
<td>List the characteristics of entrepreneurs</td>
<td>Recall entrepreneur success stories</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss the current entrepreneurship ecosystem in India</td>
<td>Understand the purpose of the Make in India campaign</td>
<td>Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and risk appetite</td>
<td>Discuss the relationship between entrepreneurship and resilience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discuss how market research is carried out</td>
<td>Describe the 4 Ps of marketing</td>
<td>Discuss the importance of idea generation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not for Sale - For Internal Circulation only
| Recall basic business terminology |
| Discuss the need for CRM |
| Discuss the benefits of CRM |
| Discuss the need for networking |
| Discuss the benefits of networking |
| Understand the importance of setting goals |
| Differentiate between short-term, medium-term and long-term goals |
| Discuss how to write a business plan |
| Explain the financial planning process |
| Discuss ways to manage your risk |
| Describe the procedure and formalities for applying for bank finance |
| Discuss how to manage your own enterprise |
| List important questions that every entrepreneur should ask before starting an enterprise |
Annexure II
Assessment Criteria

CRITERIA FOR ASSESSMENT OF TRAINEES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Criteria for Assistant Beauty Therapist</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Job Role</strong></td>
<td>Goldsmith: Component Maker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Qualification Pack</strong></td>
<td>G&amp;J/Q0603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sector Skill Council</strong></td>
<td>Gem &amp; Jewellery Skill Council of India</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Sr. No.** | **Guidelines for Assessment** |
---|---|
1 | Criteria for assessment for each Qualification Pack will be created by the Sector Skill Council. Each Performance Criteria (PC) will be assigned marks proportional to its importance in NOS. SSC will also lay down proportion of marks for Theory and Skills Practical for each PC. |
2 | The assessment for the theory part will be based on knowledge bank of questions created by the SSC |
3 | Individual assessment agencies will create theory question papers for candidates at every examination/training centre. (as per assessment criteria below) |
4 | Individual assessment agencies will create practical tests for skill evaluation for candidates at every examination/training centre. (as per assessment criteria below) |
5 | To pass the Qualification Pack, every candidate should score a minimum of 50% in theory and 70% in practical to successfully clear the assessment |
6 | In case of successfully passing only certain number of NOS’s, the candidate is eligible to take subsequent assessment on the balance NOS’s to pass the Qualification Pack. |

**Assessment Outcomes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Assessment Outcomes</strong></th>
<th><strong>Assessment criteria</strong></th>
<th><strong>Marks Allocation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>(NOS Code and Description)</strong></td>
<td><strong>(PC)</strong></td>
<td><strong>Total Marks</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. G&amp;J/N0601 Draw wire or strip from precious metal or alloy bar</td>
<td>PC1. Make wire of required thickness and evenness, not over drawn or split or cracked</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PC2. Limit precious-metal loss of damaged metal rod or wire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PC3. Deliver in time, the wires to supervisor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Facilitator Guide

Not for Sale- For Internal Circulation only
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PC4. Meet productivity target</th>
<th></th>
<th>2</th>
<th>0</th>
<th>2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PC5. Complete work with minimum hazards and accidents</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PC6. Deliver complete components on time by reporting well in advance, any problems faced or anticipated</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>19</strong></td>
<td><strong>3</strong></td>
<td><strong>16</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|   | PC1. Make balls or beads made of required size and finish as per design |   | 6 | 2 | 4 |
|   | PC2. Make number of balls against the daily target given |   | 2 | 0 | 2 |
|   | PC3. Avoid wastage in making different sizes of balls |   | 6 | 2 | 4 |
|   | PC4. Deliver in time the required quantity of balls |   | 2 | 0 | 2 |
|   | PC5. Complete the work with minimum hazards and accidents |   | 2 | 0 | 2 |
|   | PC6. Deliver completed balls on time by reporting problems faced or anticipated well in advance |   | 2 | 0 | 2 |
|   | **Total** |   | **20** | **4** | **16** |

|   | PC1. Make sheet for stamping without damaging the precious metal |   | 6 | 2 | 4 |
|   | PC2. Maintain accepted tolerance levels |   | 4 | 1 | 3 |

**Component Maker**

*Not for Sale—For Internal Circulation only*
| PC3. Make number of stamped pieces made for specified design | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| PC4. Maintain gold loss maintained within prescribed limit | 4 | 1 | 3 |
| PC5. Deliver in time | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| PC6. Achieve productivity as per target | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| PC7. Complete work with minimum hazards and accidents | 2 | 0 | 2 |
| PC8. Deliver complete product on time by reporting problems faced or anticipated well in advance | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Total | 20 | 4 | 16 |

<p>| PC1. Make wire for chain without damaging the gold | 6 | 2 | 4 |
| PC2. Make required length of chain as per the specified design | 4 | 1 | 3 |
| PC3. Limit loss to under prescribed standards | 4 | 1 | 3 |
| PC4. Deliver in time to next process | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| PC5. Achieve productivity as targeted | 2 | 0 | 2 |
| PC6. Complete work with minimum hazards and accidents | 2 | 0 | 2 |
| PC7. Deliver complete product on time by reporting problems faced or anticipated well in advance | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Total | 20 | 4 | 16 |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component Maker</th>
<th>5. G&amp;J/N9910 Maintain IPR and respect copyright</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC1. Spot plagiarism and report</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC2. Understand rationale of patents and IPR</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC3. Avoid being involved in IPR violations</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
<td><strong>7</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>6. G&amp;J/ N9912 Coordinate with co-workers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC1. Understand the work output requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC2. Understand company policy and rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC3. Deliver quality work on time as required by reporting any anticipated reasons for delays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC4. Put team over individual goals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC5. Conflicts resolution and multitasking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4. G&amp;J/ N9914 Maintain safe work environment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PC1. Spot and report potential hazards on time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC2. Follow company policy and rules regarding use of hazardous materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC3. Deliver quality work on time as required by reporting any anticipated reasons for delays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NOS Total</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>QP Total</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do

- Explain each Guideline for Assessment in detail.
- Explain the score that each trainee needs to obtain.
- Recapitulate each NOS one-by-one and take participants through the allocation of marks for Theory and Skills Practical.
- Explain the Allocation of Marks.
- Explain that they will be assessed on Theory and Skills Practical.
- Explain that for the first NOS, 24 marks are allotted for Theory and 86 for Skills Practical.